A LATIN
GRAMMAR

WEST

David O. McKay Library

RICKS COLLEGE, REXBURG, IDAHO
FOUNDED 1888

PA
2087
W52

RICKS COLLEGE LRC
3 1404 00 108 868 8

478
W57 f

FICKS NORMAL COLLEGE
LIBRARY
CALL NO. 475. W.
ACC NO.

DATE DUE

DEC 22 2008
OCT 13 2010
JUL 09 2012

GAYLORD PRINTED IN U.S.A.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

CLASSICAL SECTION

EDITED BY

JOHN HENRY WRIGHT, HARVARD UNIVERSITY
BERNADOTTE PERRIN, YALE UNIVERSITY
ANDREW FLEMING WEST, PRINCETON UNIVERSITY

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2012 with funding from
Brigham Young University-Idaho

http://archive.org/details/latingrammarfors00west

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

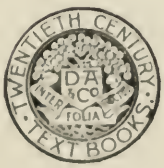
A LATIN GRAMMAR
FOR SCHOOLS

BY

ANDREW FLEMING WEST

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN PRINCETON UNIVERSITY

QVI ERGO DOCET VITABIT VERBA OMNIA QVAE NON DOCENT
RABANUS MAURUS



NEW YORK
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY
1904

Copyright, 1902
By D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

Published April, 1902

FILIO MEO
AMATISSIMO
AMANTISSIMO

PREFACE

This book is planned to give as much grammar as is serviceable in the school study of Latin. If Latin grammar is to be understood and relished by boys, it must be confined to the most necessary facts, and these must be presented in a clear and pleasing way. *Ut intelligamur insistandum est*, "insist on being understood," was the maxim of a very great teacher, and should be the supreme rule in presenting the elements of any subject. Living directness of statement, even at the risk of missing the finer shadings, is better than inanimate precision. A sketch in outline contains less, but tells the beginner far more than an elaborated picture does.

Scientific Latin grammar is not for boys, but for men. The best that can be done for a boy is to acquaint him surely with the facts of first value for him—the facts he can use in reading his school authors. This is enough; for the authors he is to read represent the best period of Latin and serve to introduce him to the literature generally. The object is not to make grammarians or Latinists, but to educate the boy—to train his taste and judgment in the field of language and literature by means of one of the most powerful instruments that can be used.

Latin grammar has been making and unmaking for two thousand years. Great grammarians have searched every nook and corner of the subject. Most of the best (and worst) things have been said. Accordingly, while an elementary grammar offers opportunities for improved restatement, it affords little chance to write with originality without writing fiction. In issuing this book I wish to acknowledge unreservedly the abundant help received from leading writers, American, English, and German, and especially from those who have done so much in our own land to clarify the school grammars. The penetrating researches of Hale, the pure brightness of Lane's renderings, the lucid order of Gildersleeve, the exactness of Lodge, the mastery of sum-

mary statement in Bennett, the steady good sense in Harkness, and the critical carefulness of Allen and Greenough's grammar—all these, I hope, have in some degree influenced this little manual, which is under many obligations to them. The Schmalz-Wagener and Ellendt-Seyffert grammars, as well as other German school editions, have likewise been constantly useful in suggestion. The fundamental studies of the masters in scientific grammar, upon which all our school grammars rest, have also been consulted at need again and again. I must mention in addition the very valuable help given by my colleagues, Professor Westcott and Dr. Charles Alexander Robinson, in solving many difficulties and in reading the proofs. Acknowledgment of friendly aid is also due to my fellow-editors in this series.

Puerulus minabit eos is an old word of prophecy, whereunto writers of school-books will "do well that they take heed, as unto a light shining in a dark place." Thus warned, I have tried to keep in ever-present view the needs of the boys and girls for whom this book has been made. If it shall lead them, without too many scratches, through what Alcuin long ago so picturesquely styled "the thorny thickets of grammatical density," it will have been well worth the writing.

Andrew F. West.

Princeton University.

NOTE TO SECOND EDITION

In issuing a new edition, separate acknowledgment cannot be made here of the many valuable suggestions received from teachers of Latin who have tested this book in the class-room. These suggestions, however, have been carefully studied and used in order to improve the Grammar in accuracy and clearness. As the test of the class-room is the final proof of usefulness, every new suggestion that will help to make the book more teachable will be most welcome.

Andrew F. West.

Princeton University, *January, 1904.*

CONTENTS

(The numbers refer to sections)

INTRODUCTORY 1–12

FIRST PART: SOUNDS . . . 13–40

I The Alphabet: Letters, 13–15; Vowels and Diphthongs, 16; Consonants, 17–25; Pronunciation, 26–29.
II Syllables: Definition, 30; Division, 31; Quantity, 32–37; Accent, 38–40.

SECOND PART: WORDS. . . 41–276

A. The Parts of Speech, 41–46.
I Nouns: Kinds, 47, 48; Genders, 49–52; Numbers, 53; Cases, 54, 55.
Declensions, 56–58; First, 59–63; Second, 64–72; Third, 73–92; Fourth, 93–96; Fifth, 97, 98; Stems and Endings of all Declensions, 99.
Indeclinable, Defective and Variable Nouns, 100–106.
II Adjectives: Declensions, 107; First and Second, 108–112; Third, 113–117; Indeclinable, 118.
Comparison, 119–129; Numerals, 130–135.
III Pronouns: Kinds, 136; Personal, 137; Reflexive, 138; Possessive, 139, 140; Demonstrative, 141–145; Intensive, 146; Relative, 147; Interrogative, 148; Indefinite, 149, 150; Pronominal and Correlative Adjectives, 151, 152; Tables, 153, 154.
IV Verbs: Definitions, 155–157; Voices, 158; Moods, 159; Tenses, 160, 161; Numbers, 162; Persons, 163.
Conjugation, 164; Stems, 165, 166; Tense and Mood Signs, 167; Personal Endings, 168, 169.

The Four Regular Conjugations, 170, 171; Synopsis, 172; Conjugation of **sum**, 173; First Conjugation, 174, 175; Second Conjugation, 176, 177; Third Conjugation, 178, 179; Fourth Conjugation, 180, 181; Verbs in **-iō**, 182–184; Deponent, 185. 186; Semi-Deponent, 187; Periphrastic, 188; Peculiar Forms, 189–192.

Changes of Stem, 193–197; Lists of Verbs giving Principal Parts, 198–220.

Irregular Verbs, 221–229; Defective, 230–232; Impersonal, 233.

THE PARTICLES, 234

V ADVERBS: Formation, 235–237; Comparison, 238–239; Classes, 240.

VI PREPOSITIONS, 241–246.

VII CONJUNCTIONS: Kinds, 247; Coördinate, 248–253; Subordinate, 254–261.

VIII INTERJECTIONS, 262.

B. THE FORMATION OF WORDS, 263: Derivatives, 264–273; Compounds, 274–276.

THIRD PART: SENTENCES . . 277–663

I THE SENTENCE IN GENERAL: Definitions, 277, 278; Ways of Stating, 279; Direct Questions, 280–283; Kinds of Sentences, 284–287: How Words are Combined, 288; Rules for Combining, 289–304.

II USES OF NOUNS: The Cases, 305; Nominative, 306; Vocative, 307; Accusative, 308–325; Dative, 326–345; Genitive, 346–371; Ablative, 372–407.

III USES OF ADJECTIVES: 408–418.

IV USES OF PRONOUNS: 419–439.

V USES OF VERBS: 440–655.

THE FINITE VERB: 440–620

(I) VOICE, PERSON, NUMBER, 442.

(II) TENSES, 443, 444; of Indicative, 445–460; of Subjunctive: in Leading Clauses, 461; in Subordinate Clauses (Sequence of Tenses), 462–472; of Imperative, 473–475.

(III) Moods: 476.
A. In Principal Clauses, 477–496.
Indicative, 477–479.
Subjunctive, 480; Volitive, 481–483; Optative, 484; Conditional, 485–490; with Negatives, 491, 492; in Questions, 493; with Indefinite Second Person, 494.
Imperative, 495, 496.
B. In Subordinate Clauses, 497–620.
I Uses of Subordinate Clauses, 498–501.
1. As Nouns (Substantive Clauses), 498, 499.
2. As Adjectives (Attributive Clauses), 500.
3. As Adverbs (Adverbial Clauses), 501.
II Forms of Subordinate Clauses, 502–620.
1. Introduced by a Conjunction (Conjunctional Clauses), 503–579; Transition to Conjunctional Clauses, 504, 505; Clauses of Purpose, 506–518; Clauses of Result, 519–528; Clauses of Time, 529–540; Clauses of Cause, 541–549; Clauses of Condition, 550–565; The Conditional Sentence, 551–562; Clauses of Comparison, 566–568; Clauses of Concession, 569–572; Negative Clauses with **quīn**, 573–579.
2. Introduced by a Relative (Relative Clauses), 580–589.
3. Introduced by an Interrogative (Indirect Questions), 590–595.
(synopsis of moods, 596)
4. Governed by Verbs of Saying or Thinking (Indirect Discourse): 597–619.
Subjunctive by Attraction, 620.
Verbal Nouns and Adjectives: 621–655
Infinitive, 622–636; Gerund and Gerundive, 637–644; Participle, 645–652; Supine, 653–655.
VI Uses of Adverbs: 656–663.
APPENDIX: 664–740.
Order of Words: Grammatical, 664–672; Rhetorical, 673–677.
Prosody, 678–717: Quantity of Syllables, 682–695; Verse and Metre, 696–717.
Roman Calendar, Roman Names, Abbreviations, 718–728.
English Pronunciation of Latin, 729–739.
Figures of Speech, 740.
Index of Latin Words 741
Index of Subjects 742

LATIN GRAMMAR

INTRODUCTORY

LANGUAGE

1 If we are to be able to tell what we think about anything, we must know how to use some kind of Language. Every language is made up of Signs. A sign is that by which anything is made known. Thus, a red light on a railway is a sign of danger, and a white light is a sign of safety. The sound of the sunset gun at a fort is a sign to lower the flag. Other well-known signs or signals are the bugle-calls in an army, and the waving of flags or flashing of lights by ships passing at sea.

2 Then there are signs that come nearer to what we commonly mean when we speak of language; that is, language in the sense of speech. Such are the movements of fingers made by the deaf and dumb, the clicks of the key in a telegraph-office, the picture-writing of American Indians, and the figures of a sum in arithmetic. For in these last cases each sign usually means either some letter of the alphabet, as in the movements of fingers and the clicks of the telegraph, or some word, as in the Indian picture-writing and the figures of a sum in arithmetic.

3 But for all men who are able to talk, the one common and most useful kind of language is Speech, the language of words spoken and written. Spoken words last only while being spoken or remembered. Written words last longer, and may last for ages, if copies are correctly made and kept

for reading. By this means we may learn what men said and thought thousands of years ago.

4 The two ways of learning a language are by speaking and reading. Our own language, or mother-tongue, is first learned by speaking and afterward by reading. Other languages now spoken in the world are also best learned by speaking, followed by reading. Ancient languages, now no longer spoken, or but little spoken, are most usefully learned by reading. For there is no great need of learning to speak them in order to talk with others, and they are best worth learning in order to read, and so to understand, what has been preserved to us in the ancient writings, or books.

GRAMMAR

5 Grammar is the study which explains speech or language. Speech is made up of words. Spoken words are made up of sounds and written words of letters, which are nothing else than written sounds. Then words may be combined with other words to make sentences. There are thus three divisions in which we may study the words which make up a language:

1. The Sounds or letters of which words are made (Sounds);
2. The separate Words themselves (Etymology);
3. The combinations of words, or Sentences (Syntax).

These are the three Parts of Grammar.

6 Words are of different kinds, according to their use and meaning. There are, first of all, the words which are used to name things or persons. They are called Nouns. Such are *eagle*, *man*, *John*, *city*, *thirst*, *truth*. Then there are the words which mean doing or being. They are called Verbs. Such are *see*, *write*, *suffer*, *come*, *is*. Nouns and Verbs are the two most important kinds of words.

7 Then there are the words which describe or tell about Nouns. They are called Adjectives. Such are *good*, *swift*, *large*, *many*, *three*. Thus we say *good man*, *swift eagle*, *three cities*. Next come the Pronouns, or words used instead of Nouns. Such are *he*, *they*, *who*. Thus we may say *he* for *John*.

There are also the words which usually describe or tell about Verbs. They are called Adverbs. Sometimes they describe Adjectives or other Adverbs. Such are *soon*, *slowly*, *very*. Thus we may say *come soon*, *write slowly*, *very good*.

8 Besides these there are the Prepositions, little words placed before Nouns or Pronouns, and often used to bring out the idea of place or time more clearly. Such are *in*, *from*, *after*. Thus we say *in school*, *after dark*, *seven from ten* (= *seven taken from ten*).

There are also Conjunctions, or joining words, such as *and*, *but*, *or*. Thus we say *boys and girls*, *poor but proud*, *sink or swim*.

Last of all are the Interjections or words of exclamation, such as *oh!* *alas!* *halloo!*

9 These eight kinds of words include all the words in a language. They are called the Parts of Speech. The last four, being less important than the others, are called Particles—"little parts" of Speech.

Parts of Speech

I. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns,
II. Verbs, Adverbs,
III. Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections.

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

10 The Latin language is so named because it was first spoken by the ancient Latin tribe which inhabited the neighborhood of Rome. It gradually spread until it became the principal

language of the Roman Empire, which once covered the whole western civilized world. It lasted as a spoken language well into the Middle Ages, and as the written language of scholars until about the middle of the eighteenth century. Some books are still written in Latin, and some scholars speak it. It is also used in our time as the language of the Roman Catholic Church.

11 It is the parent of the modern languages known as Romance languages—such as French, Spanish, and Italian. One-half of all our English words are borrowed from foreign languages, and four-fifths of these borrowed words come either directly or in a roundabout way from the Latin.

12 A knowledge of Latin is not only a great help in understanding our own mother-tongue and other modern languages, but it also enables us to read the old Latin books, especially the so-called classical books, which are models of fine style, and contain treasures of information about the life, thought, and deeds of the ancient world. We may thus almost hear the great Romans as they tell their own story in their own words.

FIRST PART: SOUNDS

THE ALPHABET

13 The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that **W** is missing.

The Romans wrote their books in capital letters. The small letters came into use early in the Middle Ages, and at the invention of printing, in the fifteenth century, were taken as models for the Roman types. Latin books, as well as most modern books and newspapers, are printed in Roman type.

14 **K** is rarely used.
Y and **Z** were brought into Latin from Greek in the time of Cicero.

15 **J** as the consonantal form of **I**, and **U** as the vowel form of **V** were not invented until the Middle Ages. Although **J** and **U** were not used by the Romans, it is convenient to retain them in order to make clear at the start the real difference in sound between **J** and **I**, **U** and **V**.

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS

16 Six letters are vowels, **a, e, i, o, u, y**. There are these six diphthongs: **ae, oe, au, eu, ei, ui.**

However, **eu, ei, ui** are often sounded separately—not as diphthongs. Other pairs of vowels are not diphthongs; that is, they are rarely or never sounded together as one. Thus **iu, ou, ie, ea,** and so on, are not diphthongs.

CONSONANTS

17 All the other letters are consonants. They are divided into six classes:

Mutes, Liquids, Nasals, Spirants, Semivowels, Double Consonants.

18 The Mutes ('dumb' sounds) are divided into

Labials (lip sounds)	p	b	ph
Dentals (tooth sounds)	t	d	th
Gutturals (throat sounds)	c, k, q	g	ch

19 They are also divided into the

Smooth or Voiceless	p, t, c, k, q
Middle or Voiced	b, d, g
Rough or Aspirate	ph, th, ch

A voiceless mute is sounded without vibration, and a voiced mute with vibration of the vocal cords. An aspirate is a voiceless mute with the breathing **h** added.

20 The sound of **ph** is not the same as *f*. The aspirates, **ph**, **th**, **ch**, are to be sounded as in *up-hill*, *cart-horse*, *inkhorn*.

21 *Table of Mutes*

	Smooth or Voiceless	Middle or Voiced	Rough or Aspirate
Labials	p	b	ph
Dentals	t	d	th
Gutturals	c, k, q	g	ch

22 The Liquids (flowing sounds) are **l**, **r**. The Nasals (nose sounds) are **m**, **n**. When followed by a guttural, **n** has the sound of *n* in *fling*. Thus **lingua**, *tongue*, is sounded *ling-gwa*.

23 The Spirants (breathings) are **f**, **s**, **h**.

24 The Consonants **j** (sounded like *y*) and **v** (sounded like *w*) are called Semivowels.

25 There are two Double Consonants, **x** and **z**. **x** is equal to **cs** or **gs**, and **z** is probably equal to **ds**.

PRONUNCIATION

26 The sounds of the letters, according to the pronunciation of the ancient Romans, are very nearly as follows:

I. VOWELS

The mark ¯ over a vowel means it is *long*, and ˘ that it is *short*. In this grammar the short vowels are not marked, except in a few special cases. The pupil should carefully remember that every unmarked vowel is short.

ā as in the last *a* of *ahá*.	**ă** as in the first *a* of *ahá*.
ē as in *whey*.	**ĕ** as in *whet*.
ī as in *pique*.	**ĭ** as in *pick*.
ō as in *omen*.	**ŏ** as in *omit*.
ū as *oo* in *pool*.	**ŭ** as in *put*.
ȳ, **y̆**, like the German *ü*.	

27 Sometimes **u** is sounded as *w*. This always occurs in **qu** and in **ngu** before a vowel. Thus **quī** = *kwee* and **lingua** = *ling-gwa* (see 22). It also occurs in **su** in the words **suāvis**, **suādeō**, **suēscō**.

28 ### Diphthongs

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.	**eu** like *eu* in *feud*.
oe like *oi* in *oil*.	**ei** like *ei* in *feint*.
au like *ow* in *owl*.	**ui** like *we*.

II. CONSONANTS

29 Consonants are sounded as in English, except that

b before **s** or **t** = *p*.
c is always like *k*.
g is always as in *get*.
j is always like *y* in *yet*.
r is slightly trilled.
s is always as in *this*, never as in *his*.
t is always as in *notice*, never as in *notion*.
v is always like *w*.
x is always like *ks*.

SYLLABLES

30 In pronouncing Latin words the letters are sounded in syllables. A syllable is a separate vowel or diphthong, or a vowel or diphthong sounded with one or more consonants. Thus **ē**, *from*, **et**, *and*, **haec**, *this*, **dum**, *while*, are words of one syllable; **Rōma**, *Rome*, **aurum**, *gold*, are words of two syllables; **Rōmānus**, *Roman*, and **folium**, *leaf*, are words of three syllables.

A word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs.

31 In dividing words into syllables:

1. One consonant between two vowels must go with the following vowel. Thus **Cae-sar**, *Caesar*, **a-xis**, *axle*.

2. Of two or more consonants standing together, as many as may begin a word usually go with the following vowel. Thus **ex-trā**, *beyond*, **mā-gnus**, *great*. But this rule is not always true, for the division of syllables is as yet imperfectly understood. The combinations of consonants which may not begin a word or syllable are:

(1) Repeated Consonants, as **mm**, **tt**. Thus **mit-tō**, *send*.

(2) A Liquid or Nasal (**l**, **m**, **n**, **r**) followed by a consonant. Thus **ul-mus**, *elm*, **cor-pus**, *body*, **am-bō**, *both*.

3. Compound words divide into their component parts. Thus **ad-sum**, *I am here*, **red-ī**, *come back*.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

32 A syllable is long either by nature or by position.

The Quantity of a syllable, whether long or short, is the time taken in sounding it. A long syllable is said to have twice the time of a short one (– equals ⏑⏑).

33 I. A syllable is long by nature if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.

The long vowel in the syllable is always long by nature—not by position. Simple rules can not be given for determining all the vowels that are long. They must be learned by practice. In this grammar all long vowels are marked. See **26**.

It is important to notice that

1. Diphthongs, vowels formed from diphthongs, and contracted vowels are long. Thus **aurae**, **iniquus** formed from **in** + **aequus**, **cōgō** contracted from **cŏ-ăgō**.

2. A vowel before **j**, **nf**, **ns**, and often before **gn**, is long. Thus **hūjus**, **īnfans**, **mēnsa**, **māgnus**.

34 Most words of one syllable are long by nature. Thus **pēs**, **sōl**, **dā**, **tū**, **quī**, **sī**, **ōs** (**ōris**).

But the following are short:

Nouns:	**vir**, **lac**, **mel**, **fel**, **cor**, **os** (**ossis**).
Pronouns:	**quis**, **quid**, **quod**, **quot**, **tot**, **is**, **id**.
Verb forms:	**dat**, **stat**, **it**, **scit**, **fer**, **fac**. Also **es** from **sum**, but **ēs** from **edō**.
Particles:	**ab**, **ac**, **ad**, **an**, **at**, **sat**, **et**, **ut**, **ob**, **sub**, **sed**, **bis**, **cis**, **cum**, **dum**, **in**, **nec**, **per**, **ter**, **vel**.
Enclitics:	**-que**, **-ve**, **-ce**, **-te**, **-pte**, **-ne**.

35 II. A syllable is long by position if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by a double consonant.

Thus the syllable **mors**, containing a vowel short by nature, is long by position. So the syllable **ab** is short by nature, but becomes long by position in **absolvō**. In all such cases the vowel stays short. It is the syllable, never the vowel, which is long by position.

It is important to remember that a vowel followed by **nt** or **nd** is regularly short, as **amant**, **amandus**. But **quīntus**, **nōndum**.

The breathing **h** is not to be counted a consonant in making position.

36 III. Almost all other syllables are short.

Thus a syllable containing a short vowel followed by another vowel, by **h**, or by a single consonant, is short; as **via**, **trahō**, **amat**.

The most important exceptions are

1. Some words taken from the Greek, as **āēr**, **Aenēās**.
2. Genitives in **-īus**, as **ūnīus**. But **utrĭusque**.

37 A syllable is common (long or short at will) if it contains a short vowel followed by a mute and l or r. A common syllable is marked by ≍. Thus te-nĕ̆-brae.

Such syllables are *common* in poetry only. In prose they are *short*.

ACCENT

38 The last syllable of a word is called the ultima, the next to the last the penult, and the next before the penult the antepenult.

39 Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: pắ ter, mā́ ter.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long: Rō mā́ nus, pu e rṓ rum. Otherwise they are accented on the antepenult: tá bu la, ma rí ti mus.

ENCLITICS

40 A few words of one syllable, called enclitics ('lean-to'), occur only when joined to a preceding word.

Such are -que, *and*, -ve, *or*, and the question-word -ne (34).

The word before the enclitic is accented on its ultima, or last syllable before the enclitic.

Thus: rosáque, *and a rose*. egóne, (*is it*) *I?*
arma virúmque, *arms and the man*.
plūs minúsve, *more or less*.

SECOND PART: WORDS

THE PARTS OF SPEECH

41 Of the eight Parts of Speech in Latin, the following five change their form to express change of meaning: Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs. The Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections do not so change.

42 There are three kinds of change: Declension, Comparison, Conjugation.

All changes of form may be included under the word Inflection, though it is also used in the sense of Declension only.

43 Declension is the simpler kind of change. It occurs in the endings of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns.

44 Comparison is a special kind of change used to express the degree of Adjectives and Adverbs.

45 Conjugation is the more complicated kind of change. It occurs in Verbs.

46 *Table of Inflection*

Nouns have	Declension.
Adjectives have	Declension and Comparison.
Pronouns have	Declension.
Verbs have	Conjugation.
Adverbs have	Comparison.

NOUNS

KINDS OF NOUNS

47 Nouns are divided into Concrete and Abstract. A Concrete noun is the name of a person, place, or thing: **homo**, *man*. An Abstract noun is the name of a quality: **amīcitia**, *friendship*.

48 Concrete nouns are divided into Proper and Common. A Proper noun is the name of some particular person, place, or thing: **Caesar**, *Caesar*, **Tiberis**, *the Tiber*. All others are Common.

GENDERS OF NOUNS

49 There are three Genders: Masculine, Feminine, Neuter. Gender is either Natural or Grammatical.

50 The rule for Natural Gender is:

Names of males are Masculine; names of

females are Feminine. Thus **pater**, *father*, **Cicerō**, *Cicero*; **soror**, *sister*, **Jūnō**, *Juno*.

51 The rules for Grammatical Gender are:

1. Names of rivers, winds, and months are Masculine: **Rhēnus**, *Rhine*, **Eurus**, *east wind*.

2. Most names of countries, islands, towns, and trees are Feminine: **Corinthus**, *Corinth*, **Aegyptus**, *Egypt*, **quercus**, *oak*.

3. Indeclinable nouns are Neuter: **nihil**, *nothing*.

4. The gender of other nouns is shown by the ending of the Nominative Singular. See **59**, **64**, **88–90**, **93**, **97**.

52 Some nouns have two grammatical and natural genders—masculine and feminine. Thus **parēns**, *parent*, **comes**, *companion*. They are said to have Common Gender. Some names of animals have one grammatical and the two natural genders: **aquila**, f., *eagle*, **ānser**, m., *goose* or *gander*. They are called Epicenes.

NUMBERS OF NOUNS

53 There are two Numbers, the Singular meaning one, and the Plural meaning more than one. Thus **arbor**, sing., *tree*, **arborēs**, pl., *trees*.

CASES OF NOUNS

54 Nouns change their endings to express change in meaning. Thus **porta**, *a gate*, **portae**, *of a gate*.

The body of the word is called the Stem, to which is attached the Ending.

The Ending is properly the part attached to the last letter of the Stem. In **portā-s** the ending is attached without change and in **portae** (for old **portā-ī**) with change. Some cases have no Ending. Oftentimes the last letter or letters of the stem are weakened, otherwise altered, or lost; as in the Nominatives **porta**, *gate*, from the older stem **portā-**, **puer**, *boy*, from **puero-**, **leō**, *lion*, from **leōn-**, **virgō**, *maiden*, from **virgin-**. The changes made in forming the Cases are too complicated for a beginner in grammar. For convenience, therefore, *the changeable part* at the end of a noun is allowed to stand as the Ending.

55 Such changes of form are called Cases. There are six Cases, both in the Singular and in the Plural.

Table of Cases

Name of Case	Answers the Questions	Principal Use
1. Nominative	What? who?	Subject
2. Genitive	Of what? whose?	In defining nouns and adjectives
3. Dative	To, for what or whom?	Indirect object
4. Accusative	What? whom?	Direct object
5. Vocative	.....	Direct address
6. Ablative	With, from, in, by what or whom?	Like an adverb

Another Case, the Locative, denoting the place where, survives in names of towns and in a few other words: **Rōmae**, *at Rome*, **domī**, *at home*.

DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS

56 The Cases taken together make up the Declension of a noun. There are five different

Declensions. They may be known apart by the last letter of the Stem or by the Genitive Ending. Thus the Stem of **porta** ends in **a**, and the Ending of **portae**, the Genitive Singular, is **ae**.

57 *Table of Declensions*

Declension	Last Letter of Stem	Genitive Ending
First	ă (ā)	-ae
Second	ŏ	-ī
Third	ĭ or a consonant	-ĭs
Fourth	ŭ	-ūs
Fifth	ē	-ēī

58 The following Cases have the same Ending:

1. Nominative and Vocative, except in the Singular of the Second Declension when the Nominative ends in **-us**.

2. Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of Neuter nouns. In the Plural these end in **-a**.

3. Nominative and Accusative Plural of all nouns in the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions.

4. Dative and Ablative Plural.

FIRST DECLENSION

59 The Stem originally ended in **ā**, later in **a**.

Nouns of the First Declension have the Nominative Singular ending in **-a**, and are of the Feminine Gender. They are declined as follows:

mēnsa (Stem **mēnsa-**), *f.*, *table*

	Case	Meaning	Ending
SING.			
Nom.	mēnsa	*a table*	-a
Gen.	mēnsae	*of a table*	-ae
Dat.	mēnsae	*to* or *for a table*	-ae
Acc.	mēnsam	*a table*	-am
Voc.	mēnsa	*O table!*	-a
Abl.	mēnsā	*with, from, in, by a table*	-ā
PLURAL			
Nom.	mēnsae	*tables*	-ae
Gen.	mēnsārum	*of tables*	-ārum
Dat.	mēnsīs	*to* or *for tables*	-īs
Acc.	mēnsās	*tables*	-ās
Voc.	mēnsae	*O tables!*	-ae
Abl.	mēnsīs	*with, from, in, by tables*	-īs

Latin has no Article: **mēnsa**, *table*, *a table*, *the table*.

60 A few nouns in **-a** are Masculine, as **nauta**, *sailor*, **scrība**, *clerk*. See **50**.

61 The Locative Singular ends in **-ae**, the Locative Plural in **-īs**; **Rōmae**, *at Rome*, **Athēnīs**, *at Athens*.

62 In a few nouns the old Genitive Singular in **-āī**, **-ās** sometimes occurs; **aulāī**, *of the hall*, **pater familiās**, *father of the family* (but **pater familiae** also occurs).

A few nouns have the Genitive Plural in **-ūm**, not in **-ārum**. Thus **caelicola**, *a celestial*, **caelicolūm**, *of celestials*.

The Dative and Ablative Plural of **dea**, *goddess*, **fīlia**, *daughter*, end in **-ābus**.

GREEK NOUNS

63 Greek nouns ending in **-ē** are Feminine. Those ending in **-ās** or **-ēs** are Masculine. In the Plural they are declined like **mēnsa**, and in the Singular as follows:

	epitomē, f., *epitome*	**Aeuēās**, m., *Aeneas*	**Anchīsēs**, m., *Anchises*
Nom.	epitomē	Aenēās	Anchīsēs
Gen.	epitomēs	Aenēae	Anchīsae
Dat.	epitomae	Aenēae	Anchīsae
Acc.	epitomēu	Aenēān (-am)	Anchīsēn
Voc.	epitomē	Aenēā (-a)	Anchīsē (-ā, -a)
Abl.	epitomē	Aenēā	Anchīsē (-ā)

SECOND DECLENSION

64 The Stem ends in **o**, which is often absorbed in the case-endings or lost altogether. Nouns of the Second Declension ending in **-us**, **-er**, **-ir** are Masculine, those in **-um** are Neuter.

65 Nouns in **-us** and **-um**

	hortus, m., *garden* Stem **hortŏ-**	Ending	**bellum**, n., *war* Stem **bellŏ-**	Ending
Sing.				
Nom.	hort**us**	**-us**	bell**um**	**-um**
Gen.	hort**ī**	**-ī**	bell**ī**	**-ī**
Dat.	hort**ō**	**-ō**	bell**ō**	**-ō**
Acc.	hort**um**	**-um**	bell**um**	**-um**
Voc.	hort**e**	**-e**	bell**um**	**-um**
Abl.	hort**ō**	**-ō**	bell**ō**	**-ō**
Plural				
Nom.	hort**ī**	**-ī**	bell**a**	**-a**
Gen.	hort**ōrum**	**-ōrum**	bell**ōrum**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	hort**īs**	**-īs**	bell**īs**	**-īs**
Acc.	hort**ōs**	**-ōs**	bell**a**	**-a**
Voc.	hort**ī**	**-ī**	bell**a**	**-a**
Abl.	hort**īs**	**-īs**	bell**īs**	**-īs**

66 Nouns in -er and -ir

	ager, m., *field* Stem **agrŏ-**	**puer**, m., *boy* Stem **puerŏ-**	**vir**, m., *man* Stem **virŏ-**	Ending
Sing.				
Nom.	ager	puer	vir	none
Gen.	agrī	puerī	virī	-ī
Dat.	agrō	puerō	virō	-ō
Acc.	agrum	puerum	virum	-um
Voc.	ager	puer	vir	none
Abl.	agrō	puerō	virō	-ō
Plural				
Nom.	agrī	puerī	virī	-ī
Gen.	agrōrum	puerōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	agrīs	puerīs	virīs	-īs
Acc.	agrōs	puerōs	virōs	-ōs
Voc.	agrī	puerī	virī	-ī
Abl.	agrīs	puerīs	virīs	-īs

67 Most nouns in -er are declined like **ager**, developing an e before the r in the Nominative and Vocative Singular. But decline **gener**, *son-in-law*, **socer**, *father-in-law*, **līberī**, *children*, **vesper**, *evening*, like **puer**. Note that **liber**, *book*, is like **ager**.

68 Some nouns in -us are Feminine, according to the general rules in 50 and 51. Thus **pirus**, f., *pear-tree*.

Also these five: **alvus**, *belly*, **carbasus**, *linen*, **colus**, *distaff* (94), **humus**, *ground*, **vannus**, *fan*.

Three in -us are Neuter: **pelagus**, *sea*, **vīrus**, *poison*, **vulgus**, *crowd*.

69 The Locative Singular ends in -ī, the Locative Plural in -īs; **domī**, *at home*, **Argīs**, *at Argos*.

Nouns in -ius and -ium have the Genitive Singular in -ī or -iī, keeping the accent on the same syllable as in the Nominative. Thus **ingénium**, *disposition*, has **ingénĭī** or **ingénī**.

2786

70 But Proper nouns in **-ius** have both the Genitive and Vocative Singular in **-ī**: **Vergílius**, *Virgil*, **Vergĭlī**, *of Virgil* or *O Virgil*. Notice that the accent in these Genitives and Vocatives is always on the penult.

The Vocative Singular of **fīlius**, *son*, is **fīlī**.

A Genitive Plural in **-ūm** occurs in some words of money, measure, and weight, especially when used with numerals.

Thus: **talentum**, *talent;* **mīlle talentūm**, *a thousand (of) talents;* **sēstertius**, *sesterce;* **mīlle sēstertiūm**, *a thousand (of) sesterces.*

Also in a few other words, as **deus**, *god*, has **deūm** (also **dīvūm**); **līberē**, *children*, has **līberūm**; **triumvirī**, *triumvirs*, has **triumvirūm**.

71 **deus**, *god*, has no Vocative Singular. The Plural is as follows:

Nom.	deī, dī
Gen.	deōrum, deūm
Dat.	deīs, dīs
Acc.	deōs
Voc.	deī, dī
Abl.	deīs, dīs

GREEK NOUNS

72 Greek nouns in **-os**, **-ōs** are Masculine or Feminine. Those in **-on** are Neuter. In the Plural most of them are declined like **hortus**, if Masculine or Feminine, and like **bellum**, if Neuter. In the Singular they are declined as follows:

	Dēlos, f., *Delos*	**Androgeōs**, m., *Androgeos*	**Īlion**, n., *Troy*
Nom.	Dēlos	Androgeōs	Īlion
Gen.	Dēlī	Androgeō, -ī	Īliī
Dat.	Dēlō	Androgeō	Īliō
Acc.	Dēlum, -on	Androgeō, -ōn	Īlion
Voc.	Dēle	Androgeōs	Īlion
Abl.	Dēlō	Androgeō	Īliō

THIRD DECLENSION

73 The Stem ends in -ĭ or a consonant, and the nouns are divided according to their Stems into four classes, as follows:

A. Consonant Stems. C. Mixed Stems.
B. ĭ- Stems. D. Rare and Irregular.

74 The Nominative Singular ends in one of the following letters:

-a, -e, -ī, -ō, -y,
-c, -l, -n, -r, -s, -t, -x.

All these may be remembered by the words *irons exactly.*

A. Consonant Stems

75 The Consonant Stems end in a Mute, Liquid, Nasal, or Spirant. See **17**. The Mute Stems end in a Labial, Dental, or Guttural. See **18**.

I. Mute Stems

76 1. Stems ending in a Labial: **b** or **p**

	trabs, f., *beam* Stem **trab-**	**prīnceps**, m., *chief* Stem **prīncip-**	Ending
Sing.			
Nom.	trab**s**	prīncep**s**	**-s**
Gen.	trab**is**	prīncip**is**	**-is**
Dat.	trab**ī**	prīncip**ī**	**-ī**
Acc.	trab**em**	prīncip**em**	**-em**
Voc.	trab**s**	prīncep**s**	**-s**
Abl.	trab**e**	prīncip**e**	**-e**
Plural			
Nom.	trab**ēs**	prīncip**ēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	trab**um**	prīncip**um**	**-um**
Dat.	trab**ibus**	prīncip**ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	trab**ēs**	prīncip**ēs**	**-ēs**
Voc.	trab**ēs**	prīncip**ēs**	**-ēs**
Abl.	trab**ibus**	prīncip**ibus**	**-ibus**

Notice that the **i** in the last syllable of the Stem **prīncip-** is changed to **e** in the Nominative and Vocative Singular. This usually occurs in every kind of consonant stem of two syllables containing **i** in the last syllable.

77 2. Stems ending in a Dental : **d** or **t**

	lapis, m., *stone* Stem **lapid-**	**mīles**, m., *soldier* Stem **mīlit-**	**aetās**, f., *age* Stem **aetāt-**
SING.			
Nom.	lapis	mīles	aetās
Gen.	lapid**is**	mīlit**is**	aetāt**is**
Dat.	lapidī	mīlitī	aetātī
Acc.	lapid**em**	mīlit**em**	aetāt**em**
Voc.	lapis	mīles	aetās
Abl.	lapid**e**	mīlit**e**	aetāt**e**
PLURAL			
Nom.	lapidēs	mīlitēs	aetātēs
Gen.	lapid**um**	mīlit**um**	aetāt**um**
Dat.	lapid**ibus**	mīlit**ibus**	aetāt**ibus**
Acc.	lapidēs	mīlitēs	aetātēs
Voc.	lapidēs	mīlitēs	aetātēs
Abl.	lapid**ibus**	mīlit**ibus**	aetāt**ibus**

Notice that final **t** and **d** of the Stem are lost before **-s**.

78 3. Stems ending in a Guttural : **g** or **c**

	rēx, m., *king* Stem **rēg-**	**rādīx**, f., *root* Stem **rādīc-**	**dux**, m. and f., *leader* Stem **duc-**
SING.			
Nom.	rē**x**	rādī**x**	du**x**
Gen.	rēg**is**	rādīc**is**	duc**is**
Dat.	rēgī	rādīcī	ducī
Acc.	rēg**em**	rādīc**em**	duc**em**
Voc.	rē**x**	rādī**x**	du**x**
Abl.	rēg**e**	rādīc**e**	duc**e**
PLURAL			
Nom.	rēgēs	rādīcēs	ducēs
Gen.	rēg**um**	rādīc**um**	duc**um**
Dat.	rēg**ibus**	rādīc**ibus**	duc**ibus**
Acc.	rēgēs	rādīcēs	ducēs
Voc.	rēgēs	rādīcēs	ducēs
Abl.	rēg**ibus**	rādīc**ibus**	duc**ibus**

Notice that final **g** and **c** of the Stem combine with **-s** of the Ending to form the double consonant **x**. See **25**.

79 II. Liquid Stems; **l** or **r**

	cōnsul, m., *consul* Stem **cōnsul-**	**victor**, m., *victor* Stem **victōr-**	**aequor**, n., *sea* Stem **aequŏr-**	Ending	
				m., f.	n.
Sing.					
Nom.	cōnsul	victor	aequor	——	——
Gen.	cōnsul**is**	victōr**is**	aequor**is**	**-is**	**-is**
Dat.	cōnsulī	victōrī	aequorī	**-ī**	**-ī**
Acc.	cōnsul**em**	victōr**em**	aequor	**-em**	——
Voc.	cōnsul	victor	aequor	——	——
Abl.	cōnsul**e**	victōr**e**	aequor**e**	**-e**	**-e**
Plural					
Nom.	cōnsul**ēs**	victōr**ēs**	aequor**a**	**-ēs**	**-a**
Gen.	cōnsul**um**	victōr**um**	aequor**um**	**-um**	**-um**
Dat.	cōnsul**ibus**	victōr**ibus**	aequor**ibus**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	cōnsul**ēs**	victōr**ēs**	aequor**a**	**-ēs**	**-a**
Voc.	cōnsul**ēs**	victōr**ēs**	aequor**a**	**-ēs**	**-a**
Abl.	cōnsul**ibus**	victōr**ibus**	aequor**ibus**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**

Notice that Liquid Stems form the Nominative and Vocative Singular of Masculine and Feminine nouns and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of Neuter nouns without the case-ending.

80 III. Nasal Stems: **n**

	leō, m., *lion* Stem **leōn-**	**virgō**, f., *maiden* Stem **virgin-**	**nōmen**, n., *name* Stem **nōmin-**
Sing.			
Nom.	leō	virgō	nōmen
Gen.	leōn**is**	virgin**is**	nōmin**is**
Dat.	leōnī	virginī	nōminī
Acc.	leōn**em**	virgin**em**	nōmen
Voc.	leō	virgō	nōmen
Abl.	leōn**e**	virgin**e**	nōmin**e**
Plural			
Nom.	leōn**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	nōmin**a**
Gen.	leōn**um**	virgin**um**	nōmin**um**
Dat.	leōn**ibus**	virgin**ibus**	nōmin**ibus**
Acc.	leōn**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	nōmin**a**
Voc.	leōn**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	nōmin**a**
Abl.	leōn**ibus**	virgin**ibus**	nōmin**ibus**

Notice that Nasal Stems often lose final **n** in the Nominative and Vocative Singular. Their case-endings are the same as for Liquid Stems.

81 IV. Spirant Stems: **s**

	mōs, m., *custom* Stem **mōs-**	**honor**, m., *honor* Stem **honōs-**	**corpus**, n., *body* Stem **corpos-**
Sing.			
Nom.	mōs	honor	corpus
Gen.	mōr**is**	honōr**is**	corpor**is**
Dat.	mōrī	honōrī	corporī
Acc.	mōr**em**	honōr**em**	corpus
Voc.	mōs	honor	corpus
Abl.	mōr**e**	honōr**e**	corpor**e**
Plural			
Nom.	mōr**ēs**	honōr**ēs**	corpor**a**
Gen.	mōr**um**	honōr**um**	corpor**um**
Dat.	mōr**ibus**	honōr**ibus**	corpor**ibus**
Acc.	mōr**ēs**	honōr**ēs**	corpor**a**
Voc.	mōr**ēs**	honōr**ēs**	corpor**a**
Abl.	mōr**ibus**	honōr**ibus**	corpor**ibus**

Notice that the final **s** of Spirant Stems changes to **r** between two vowels, and becomes **r** in the Nominative and Vocative Singular of **honor, arbor, clāmor, color, dolor.**

82 B. **ĭ**- Stems

I. With Nominative in **-is**

	turris, f., *tower* Stem **turri-**	**īgnis**, m., *fire* Stem **īgni-**	**hostis**, m. f., *foe* Stem **hosti-**	Ending
Sing.				
Nom.	turr**is**	īgn**is**	host**is**	**-is**
Gen.	turr**is**	īgn**is**	host**is**	**-is**
Dat.	turrī	īgnī	hostī	**-ī**
Acc.	turr**im**, **-em**	īgn**em**	host**em**	**-im**, **-em**
Voc.	turr**is**	īgn**is**	host**is**	**-is**
Abl.	turrī, **-e**	īgnī, **-e**	host**e**	**-ī**, **-e**
Plural				
Nom.	turr**ēs**	īgn**ēs**	host**ēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	turr**ium**	īgn**ium**	host**ium**	**-ium**
Dat.	turr**ibus**	īgn**ibus**	host**ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	turr**īs**, **-ēs**	īgn**īs**, **-ēs**	host**īs**, **-ēs**	**-īs**, **-ēs**
Voc.	turr**ēs**	īgn**ēs**	host**ēs**	**-ēs**
Abl.	turr**ibus**	īgn**ibus**	host**ibus**	**-ibus**

Notice that these nouns end in -is in the Nominative Singular and in -ium in the Genitive Plural. The original endings -im, -ī (in Ablative), and -īs are less common than the later -em, -e, -ēs. The Accusative in -im and Ablative in -ī occur in the following important nouns:

Always in sitis, *thirst*, tussis, *cough*, and names of towns and rivers in -is: Neāpolis, *Naples*, Tiberis, *the Tiber*.

Often in restis, *rope*, secūris, *axe*, turris, *tower*.
Sometimes in clāvis, *key*, messis, *harvest*, nāvis, *ship*.

There are many nouns in -is, some of them formed from Consonant Stems. In the following nouns in -is the Genitive Plural in -um, not in -ium, occurs:

Always in juvenis, *young man*, senex, *old man*, canis, *dog*, pānis, *bread*.

Sometimes in mēnsis, *month*, sēdēs, *seat*, vātēs, *bard*.

83 II. With Nominative in -e, -al, -ar

	cubīle, n., *couch* Stem **cubīli-**	**animal**, n., *animal* Stem **animāli-**	**calcar**, n., *spur* Stem **calcāri-**	Ending
Sing.				
Nom.	cubīle	animal	calcar	none
Gen.	cubīl**is**	animāl**is**	calcār**is**	**-is**
Dat.	cubīlī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
Acc.	cubīle	animal	calcar	none
Voc.	cubīle	animal	calcar	none
Abl.	cubīlī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
Plural				
Nom.	cubīl**ia**	animāl**ia**	calcār**ia**	**-ia**
Gen.	cubīl**ium**	animāl**ium**	calcār**ium**	**-ium**
Dat.	cubīl**ibus**	animāl**ibus**	calcār**ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	cubīl**ia**	animāl**ia**	calcār**ia**	**-ia**
Voc.	cubīl**ia**	animāl**ia**	calcār**ia**	**-ia**
Abl.	cubīl**ibus**	animāl**ibus**	calcār**ibus**	**-ibus**

Notice that final **i** of the Stem is either lost or changed to **e**. The Ablative Singular ends in -ī, the Geni-

tive Plural in **-ium**, and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural in **-ia**. Proper nouns in **-e** have the Ablative Singular in **-e**: **ā Bibracte**, *from Bibracte*.

C. Mixed Stems

84 These appear to be Consonant Stems treated in the Plural as ĭ- Stems.

	nūbēs, f., *cloud* Stem **nūb(i)-**	**urbs**, f., *city* Stem **urb(i)-**	**arx**, f., *citadel* Stem **arc(i)-**	**imber**, m., *shower* Stem **imbr(i)-**	Ending
Sing.					
Nom.	nūbēs	urbs	arx	imber	-s
Gen.	nūbis	urbis	arcis	imbris	-is
Dat.	nūbī	urbī	arcī	imbrī	-ī
Acc.	nūbem	urbem	arcem	imbrem	-em
Voc.	nūbēs	urbs	arx	imber	-s
Abl.	nūbe	urbe	arce	imbre, -ī	-e, -ī
Plural					
Nom.	nūbēs	urbēs	arcēs	imbrēs	-ēs
Gen.	nūbium	urbium	arcium	imbrium	-ium
Dat.	nūbibus	urbibus	arcibus	imbribus	-ibus
Acc.	nūbēs, -īs	urbēs, -īs	arcēs, -īs	imbrēs, -īs	-ēs, -īs
Voc.	nūbēs	urbēs	arcēs	imbrēs	-ēs
Abl.	nūbibus	urbibus	arcibus	imbribus	-ibus

Notice the Genitive Plural in **-ium**, and the Accusative Plural in **-ēs** or **-īs**.

Important nouns with Mixed Stems are:

1. Nouns in **-ēs**, with Genitive in **-is**; as **aedēs**, *temple*, **caedēs**, *slaughter*, **clādēs**, *disaster*, **nūbēs**, *cloud*, **rūpēs**, *rock*.

2. Most monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant; as **arx**, *citadel*, **calx**, *heel*, **stirps**, *stock*, **urbs**, *city*.

Also **dēns, gēns, mēns,**
fōns, mōns, pōns,
ars, pars, sors.

3. Most nouns in **-ns, -rs**; as **cliēns, tridēns, cohors.**

4. **fūr, līs, mās, mūs, nix.**

D. Rare and Irregular Forms

85 Stems in **-ī, -u, -ou (= -ov)**

	vīs, f., *force* Stem **vī-**	**sūs**, m. f., *swine* Stem **su-**	**bōs**, m. f., *ox, cow* Stem **bou-**
Sing.			
Nom.	vīs	sūs	bōs
Gen.	——	suis	bovis
Dat.	——	suī	bovī
Acc.	vim	suem	bovem
Voc.	——	sūs	bōs
Abl.	vī	sue	bove
Plural			
Nom.	vīrēs	suēs	bovēs
Gen.	vīrium	suum	bovum, boum
Dat.	vīribus	suibus, subus	bōbus, būbus
Acc.	vīrēs	suēs	bovēs
Voc.	vīrēs	suēs	bovēs
Abl.	vīribus	suibus, subus	bōbus, būbus

Jūpiter, *Jupiter*, is declined in the Singular only: **Jūpiter, Jovis, Jovī, Jovem, Jūpiter, Jove.**

86 Irregular Nouns

	senex, m., *old man*	**carō**, f., *flesh*	**os**, n., *bone*	**iter**, n., *journey*
Sing.				
Nom.	senex	carō	os	iter
Gen.	senis	carnis	ossis	itineris
Dat.	senī	carnī	ossī	itinerī
Acc.	senem	carnem	os	iter
Voc.	senex	carō	os	iter
Abl.	sene	carne	osse	itinere
Plural				
Nom.	senēs	carnēs	ossa	itinera
Gen.	senum	——	ossium	itinerum
Dat.	senibus	carnibus	ossibus	itineribus
Acc.	senēs	carnēs	ossa	itinera
Voc.	senēs	carnēs	ossa	itinera
Abl.	senibus	carnibus	ossibus	itineribus

87 The Locative Singular ends in **-ī** or **-e**, the Locative Plural in **-ibus**: **Tīburī** or **Tībure**, *at Tibur*, **rūrī**, *in the country*, **vesperī** or **vespere**, *at evening*, **Gādibus**, *at Gades*.

RULES FOR GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

88 Nouns in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -es, are Masculine.

IMPORTANT EXCEPTIONS

1. In -ō, -or, -ōs.
   Feminine: carō, *flesh*, arbor, *tree*, dōs, *dowry*.
   Neuter: aequor, *sea*, cor, *heart*, ōs, *mouth*. Also ŏs, *bone*.
2. In -er, -es.
   Feminine: linter, *boat*, seges, *crop*.
   Neuter: iter, *way*, aes, *copper*. Also vēr, *spring*.

89 Nouns in -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys; -x, -s (after a consonant); -dō, -gō; -iō (in abstract and collective nouns), are Feminine.

IMPORTANT EXCEPTIONS

1. In -ās, -ēs.
   Masculine: ās, *farthing*, pēs, *foot*, ariēs, *ram*, pariēs, *wall*.
2. In -is.
   Masculine: All in -nis and -guis; as fīnis, *end*, īgnis, *fire*, pānis, *bread*, sanguis, *blood*.
   Also axis, *axle* fascis, *bundle* orbis, *circle*
   collis, *hill* lapis, *stone* piscis, *fish*
   ēnsis, *sword* mēnsis, *month* pulvis, *dust*
3. In -ūs.
   Common: mūs, *mouse*.
   Neuter: crūs, *leg*, jūs, *right*, rūs, *the country*.
4. In -x.
   Masculine: calix, *cup*, grex, *flock*, vertex, *summit*.
5. In -s after a consonant.
   Masculine: dēns, *tooth*, fōns, *fountain*, mōns, *mountain*, pōns, *bridge*.
6. In -dō, -gō.
   Masculine: cardō, *hinge*, ōrdō, *order*, margō, *border*.

90 Nouns in -a, -e, -ī, -y; -c, -l, -n, -t; -ar, -ur, -us, are Neuter.

IMPORTANT EXCEPTIONS

1. In -l.
   Masculine: **sāl**, *salt*, **sōl**, *sun*.
2. In -ur, -us.
   Masculine: **vultur**, *vulture*, **lepus**, *hare*.

GREEK NOUNS

91 Greek nouns of the Third Declension often take the regular Latin endings, but sometimes preserve their Greek endings, particularly the following:

1. -ă in Accusative Singular.
2. -ĕs in Nominative Plural.
3. -ăs in Accusative Plural.
4. -īs in Dative and Ablative Plural of Neuters in -ma.

	hērōs, m., *hero*	**lampas**, f., *torch*	**poēma**, n., *poem*
SING. Nom.	hērō**s**	lampa**s**	poēma
Gen.	hērō**is**	lampad**os**	poēmat**is**
Dat.	hērō**ī**	lampadī	poēmatī
Acc.	hērō**a**	lampad**a**	poēma
Voc.	hērō**s**	lampa**s**	poēma
Abl.	hērō**e**	lampad**e**	poēmat**e**
PLUR. Nom.	hērō**ĕs**	lampadĕ**s**	poēmat**a**
Gen.	hērō**um**	lampad**um**	poēmat**um**
Dat.	hērō**ibus**	lampad**ibus**	poēmatīs
Acc.	hērō**ăs**	lampadă**s**	poēmat**a**
Voc.	hērō**ĕs**	lampadĕ**s**	poēmat**a**
Abl.	hērō**ibus**	lampad**ibus**	poēmatīs

But Greek Nouns are sometimes declined with both Greek and Latin endings.

92 Examples of Greek Proper Nouns:

	Dīdō, *Dido*	**Paris**, *Paris*	**Atlās**, *Atlas*
SING. Nom.	Dīdō	Paris	Atlās
Gen.	Dīdūs, -ōnis	Paridis, -os	Atlantis
Dat.	Dīdō, -ōnī	Paridī, -i	Atlantī
Acc.	Dīdō, -ōnem	Parida, -im	Atlanta
Voc.	Dīdō	Paris, Pari	Atlā
Abl.	Dīdō, -ōne	Paride	Atlante

FOURTH DECLENSION

93 The Stem ends in **-ŭ**. Fourth Declension nouns in **-us** are Masculine, those in **-ū** are Neuter.

	frūctus, m., *fruit* Stem **frūctu-**	Ending	**cornū**, n., *horn* Stem **cornu-**	Ending
SING.				
Nom.	frūc**tus**	**-us**	corn**ū**	**-ū**
Gen.	frūctū**s**	**-ūs**	cornū**s**	**-ūs**
Dat.	frūctu**ī**, **-ū**	**-uī**, **-ū**	corn**ū**	**-ū**
Acc.	frūctu**m**	**-um**	corn**ū**	**-ū**
Voc.	frūc**tus**	**-us**	corn**ū**	**-ū**
Abl.	frūctū	**-ū**	corn**ū**	**-ū**
PLURAL				
Nom.	frūctū**s**	**-ūs**	corn**ua**	**-ua**
Gen.	frūctu**um**	**-uum**	corn**uum**	**-uum**
Dat.	frūc**tibus**	**-ibus**	corn**ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	frūctū**s**	**-ūs**	corn**ua**	**-ua**
Voc.	frūctū**s**	**-ūs**	corn**ua**	**-ua**
Abl.	frūc**tibus**	**-ibus**	corn**ibus**	**-ibus**

94 These nouns in **-us** are Feminine: **acus**, *needle*, **anus**, *old woman*, **colus**, *distaff* (**68**), **domus**, *house*, **manus**, *hand*, **porticus**, *porch*, **īdūs** (pl.), *the Ides*.

95 **domus**, f., *house*, is declined as follows:

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	dom**us**	domū**s**
Gen.	domū**s**	dom**uum**, domō**rum**
Dat.	domu**ī**, domō	dom**ibus**
Acc.	dom**um**	domū**s**, domō**s**
Voc.	dom**us**	domū**s**
Abl.	domū, domō	dom**ibus**

There is also the Locative form **domī**, *at home*.

96 These nouns have **-ubus** or **-ibus** in the Dative and Ablative Plural: **acus**, *needle*, **artūs**, *limbs*, **partus**, *birth*, **portus**, *harbor*; and dissyllables in **-cus**, as **arcus**, *bow*, **lacus**, *lake*. **tribus**, *tribe*, has **-ubus** only.

FIFTH DECLENSION

97 The Stem ends in **-ē**. Fifth Declension nouns end in **-ēs**, and are Feminine.

	rēs, f., *thing* Stem **rē-**	**diēs**, m., *day* Stem **diē-**	**spēs**, f., *hope* Stem **spē-**	**fidēs**, f., *faith* Stem **fidē-**	Ending
SING.					
Nom.	rēs	diēs	spēs	fidēs	**-ēs**
Gen.	reī	diēī	speī	fideī	**-ĕī**
Dat.	reī	diēī	speī	fideī	**-ĕī**
Acc.	rem	diem	spem	fidem	**-em**
Voc.	rēs	diēs	spēs	fidēs	**-ēs**
Abl.	rē	diē	spē	fidē	**-ē**
PLURAL					
Nom.	rēs	diēs	spēs	——	**-ēs**
Gen.	rērum	diērum	——	——	**-ērum**
Dat.	rēbus	diēbus	——	——	**-ēbus**
Acc.	rēs	diēs	spēs	——	**-ēs**
Voc.	rēs	diēs	——	——	**-ēs**
Abl.	rēbus	diēbus	——	——	**-ēbus**

98 The Locative case ends in **-ē**. It occurs in the compounds of **diē**: as **hodiē**, *to-day*, **prīdiē**, *on the day before*. In the Genitive and Dative Singular **-ē** is sometimes the ending, instead of **-ĕī**, as **aciē** for **aciēī**, *of the battle-line*.

merīdiēs, *noon*, is always and **diēs**, *day*, is usually masculine. **diēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially when it means an appointed time.

99 *Stems and Endings of All Declensions*

		FIRST	SECOND		THIRD		FOURTH		FIFTH
		-a	-ŏ		-ĭ or Consonant		-ŭ		-ē
		F.	M.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M.	N.	F.
SINGULAR	Nom.	-a	-us, —	-um	-s, —	—	-us	-ū	-ēs
	Gen.	-ae	-ī	-ī	-is	-is	-ūs	-ūs	-ĕī
	Dat.	-ae	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī	-uī, -ū	-ū	-ĕī
	Acc.	-am	-um	-um	-em, -im	—	-um	-ū	-em
	Voc.	-a	-e, —	-um	-s, —	—	-us	-ū	-ēs
	Abl.	-ā	-ō	-ō	-e, -ī	-e, -ī	-ū	-ū	-ē
PLURAL	Nom.	-ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-(i)a	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
	Gen.	-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-(i)um	-(i)um	-uum	-uum	-ērum
	Dat.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus
	Acc.	-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs, -īs	-(i)a	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
	Voc.	-ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-(i)a	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
	Abl.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus

Indeclinable, Defective, and Variable Nouns of All Declensions

I. INDECLINABLE

100 Indeclinable Nouns are neuter, and occur in the singular only.

They are **fās**, *right*, **nefās**, *wrong*, **nihil**, *nothing*, **īnstar**, *likeness*, **māne**, *morning*.

II. DEFECTIVE

101 Defective nouns lacking a regular plural meaning are used mostly in the singular.

1. Proper names; as **Rōma**, *Rome*, **Ītalia**, *Italy*.
2. Abstract nouns; as **gravitās**, *dignity*.
3. Names of material; as **ferrum**, *iron*, **oleum**, *oil*.

102 Defective nouns used only in the plural:

1. Names of classes: as **mājōrēs**, *ancestors*, **geminī**, *twins*.

2. Some names of places: as **Athēnae**, *Athens*, **Gādes**, *Gades*, **Alpēs**, *the Alps*.

3. Also the following:

angustiae, *narrows, a defile*
arma, *arms*
dīvitiae, *riches*
īnsidiae, *ambush, "snares"*
mānēs, *the shades*
minae, *threats*
nūptiae, *nuptials*
reliquiae, *remains*
tenĕbrae, *darkness, the "shades" of night*

103 Nouns Defective in Singular. Important to remember are:

	jussū, *by order*	**nātū**, *by birth*	**fors**, *chance*	**spontis**, *of choice*	**precī**, *for prayer*	**vices**, *turn*	**opis**, *of help*
Nom.	——	——	**fors**	——	——	**vices**	——
Gen.	——	——	——	**spontis**	——	**vicis**	**opis**
Dat.	——	——	——	——	**precī**	——	**opī**
Acc.	——	——	——	——	**precem**	**vicem**	**opem**
Abl.	**jussū**	**nātū**	**forte**	**sponte**	**prece**	**vice**	**ope**

III. VARIABLE

104 Nouns varying their meaning in the Plural:

aedēs, *temple*
auxilium, *help*
castrum, *castle*
cōpia, *plenty*
fīnis, *end*
grātia, *favor*
impedīmentum, *hindrance*
littera, *letter of alphabet*
mōs, *custom*
(ops) opis, *help*
pars, *part*
aedēs, *house*
auxilia, *auxiliaries*
castra, *camp*
cōpiae, *troops*
fīnēs, *boundaries*
grātiae, *thanks*
impedīmenta, *baggage*
litterae, *epistle*
mōrēs, *morals, character*
opēs, *resources*
partēs, *a party*

105 Nouns varying in Gender (Heterogeneous).

1. In the singular:

clipeus, clipeum, *shield.*

2. In the plural:

locī, m., *topics,* **loca,** n., *places*;
jocī, m., and **joca,** n., *jests.*

3. Between the singular and plural: **caelum,** n., *heaven,* **caelī,** m., *the heavens*; **epulum,** n., and **epulae,** f., *feast.*

106 Nouns varying in Declension (Heteroclites).

1. First and Fifth. Some First Declension nouns in **-ia** have Fifth Declension forms in **-iēs,** as **māteria, māteriēs,** *matter.*

2. Second and Third: **jūgerum, -ī,** *acre*; plural **jūgera, -um, -ibus**; **vās, vāsis,** *jar*; plural **vāsa, vāsōrum.**

3. Second and Fourth: **domus,** *house,* **colus,** *distaff.*

4. Third and Fifth: **plēbs, -bis,** or **plēbēs, -eī,** *the people.* Two nouns of the Third Declension, **requiēs,** *rest,* and **famēs,** *hunger,* take respectively the additional Fifth Declension forms **requiem** and **famē.**

ADJECTIVES

107 Adjectives are declined like Nouns, and have three genders in each case. Thus, Nominative **bonus,** m., **bona,** f., **bonum,** n., *good.* Adjectives are divided into—

I. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

II. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

I. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

108 **bonus**, *good*; masculine like **hortus**

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
SING.			
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL			
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

109 **līber**, *free*; masculine like **puer**

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
SING.			
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum
Voc.	līber	lībera	līberum
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō
PLURAL			
Nom.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Voc.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Abl.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

110 **sacer**, *sacred*; masculine like **ager**

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sing.			
Nom.	sacer	sacra	sacrum
Gen.	sacrī	sacrae	sacrī
Dat.	sacrō	sacrae	sacrō
Acc.	sacrum	sacram	sacrum
Voc.	sacer	sacra	sacrum
Abl.	sacrō	sacrā	sacrō
Plural			
Nom.	sacrī	sacrae	sacra
Gen.	sacrōrum	sacrārum	sacrōrum
Dat.	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs
Acc.	sacrōs	sacrās	sacra
Voc.	sacrī	sacrae	sacra
Abl.	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs

111 Most adjectives in **-er** are declined like **sacer**. A few are like **līber**; as **asper**, *rough*, **miser**, *wretched*, **tener**, *tender*. **dexter**, *right*, is declined both ways: **dextera**, **dexterum**, or **dextra**, **dextrum**.

112 Nine adjectives have **-īus** throughout the Genitive Singular and **-ī** throughout the Dative Singular:

ūnus	**ūna**	**ūnum**	*one*
sōlus	**sōla**	**sōlum**	*alone*
tōtus	**tōta**	**tōtum**	*whole*
ūllus	**ūlla**	**ūllum**	*any*
nūllus	**nūlla**	**nūllum**	*not any, no*
alius	**alia**	**aliud**	*another*
alter	**altera**	**alterum**	*the other*
uter	**utra**	**utrum**	*which (of two)?*
neuter	**neutra**	**neutrum**	*neither*

These adjectives have no Vocative. The Genitive of **alter** is regularly **alterĭus** in poetry, but in prose **alterīus**. This is used in place of the Genitive **alīus**, which is rare.

Notice **-d** in the Neuter Singular ending of **alius** in Nominative and Accusative.

II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

113 These are divided, according to their Endings in the Nominative, into

1. Adjectives of Three Endings.
2. Adjectives of Two Endings.
3. Adjectives of One Ending.

Except Comparatives, they are nearly all declined like ĭ-Stems.

1. *Adjectives of Three Endings*

114 **ācer**, *sharp*

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sing.			
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Plural			
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrēs, -īs	ācrēs, -īs	ācria
Voc.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

But **celer**, *swift*, keeps the **e** before **r**: **celer, celeris, celere.**

115 *2. Adjectives of Two Endings*

fortis, *strong* — **fortior**, *stronger*

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
SING.				
Nom.	fort**is**	fort**e**	fort**ior**	fort**ius**
Gen.	fort**is**	fort**is**	fort**iōris**	fort**iōris**
Dat.	fort**ī**	fort**ī**	fort**iōrī**	fort**iōrī**
Acc.	fort**em**	fort**e**	fort**iōrem**	fort**ius**
Voc.	fort**is**	fort**e**	fort**ior**	fort**ius**
Abl.	fort**ī**	fort**ī**	fort**iōre**	fort**iōre**
PLURAL				
Nom.	fort**ēs**	fort**ia**	fort**iōrēs**	fort**iōra**
Gen.	fort**ium**	fort**ium**	fort**iōrum**	fort**iōrum**
Dat.	fort**ibus**	fort**ibus**	fort**iōribus**	fort**iōribus**
Acc.	fort**ēs**, **-īs**	fort**ia**	fort**iōrēs**	fort**iōra**
Voc.	fort**ēs**	fort**ia**	fort**iōrēs**	fort**iōra**
Abl.	fort**ibus**	fort**ibus**	fort**iōribus**	fort**iōribus**

Comparatives are declined like **fortior**. Notice in **fortior** the Ablative Singular in **-e**, the Genitive Plural in **-um**, and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural Neuter in **-a**. The endings **-ī** (Ablative) and **-īs** occur, but are rare.

116 *3. Adjectives of One Ending*

fēlīx, *happy* — **amāns**, *loving*

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
SING.				
Nom.	fēlī**x**	fēlī**x**	amā**ns**	amā**ns**
Gen.	fēlīc**is**	fēlīc**is**	amant**is**	amant**is**
Dat.	fēlīc**ī**	fēlīc**ī**	amant**ī**	amant**ī**
Acc.	fēlīc**em**	fēlī**x**	amant**em**	amā**ns**
Voc.	fēlī**x**	fēlī**x**	amā**ns**	amā**ns**
Abl.	fēlīc**ī**	fēlīc**ī**	amant**ī**	amant**ī**
PLURAL				
Nom.	fēlīc**ēs**	fēlīc**ia**	amant**ēs**	amant**ia**
Gen.	fēlīc**ium**	fēlīc**ium**	amant**ium**	amant**ium**
Dat.	fēlīc**ibus**	fēlīc**ibus**	amant**ibus**	amant**ibus**
Acc.	fēlīc**ēs**, **-īs**	fēlīc**ia**	amant**ēs**, **-īs**	amant**ia**
Voc.	fēlīc**ēs**	fēlīc**ia**	amant**ēs**	amant**ia**
Abl.	fēlīc**ibus**	fēlīc**ibus**	amant**ibus**	amant**ibus**

In the Ablative Singular **-e** for **-ī** often occurs in poetry, but is not common in prose of the classical period, except in Participles in **-āns** and **-ēns** used as nouns or occurring in the Ablative Absolute (397). Thus **amante**, *lover*, **mē imperante**, *by my command.*

7 Less regular are such Adjectives of One Ending as the following:

	vetus, *old*		**memor**, *mindful*		**plūs**, *more*	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
SING.						
Nom.	vetus	vetus	memor	memor	—	plūs
Gen.	veteris	veteris	memoris	memoris	—	plūris
Dat.	veterī	veterī	memorī	memorī	—	—
Acc.	veterem	vetus	memorem	memor	—	plūs
Voc.	vetus	vetus	memor	memor	—	—
Abl.	vetere	vetere	memorī	memorī	—	plūre
PLUR.						
Nom.	veterēs	vetera	memorēs	—	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	veterum	veterum	memorum	—	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	veteribus	veteribus	memoribus	—	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	veterēs	vetera	memorēs, -īs	—	plūrēs, -īs	plūra
Voc.	veterēs	vetera	memorēs	—	—	—
Abl.	veteribus	veteribus	memoribus	—	plūribus	plūribus

Like **vetus** in case-endings are **dīves** (gen. **dīvitis**), *rich*, **pauper** (gen. **pauperis**), *poor*, **particeps** (gen. **participis**), *sharing*, **prīnceps** (gen. **prīncipis**), *chief*. Like **memor** is **inops** (gen. **inopis**), *needy*.

13 Indeclinable Adjectives: **frūgī**, *thrifty*, **nēquam**, *worthless*, and most Cardinal Numeral Adjectives. See **132**.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Regular Comparison

19 Adjectives are compared in three Degrees—the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative; as

fortis, fortior, fortissimus, *strong, stronger, strongest.*

120 The Comparative is formed by adding **-ior** (neuter **-ius**), and the Superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a, -um**) to the Stem of the Positive.

When the stem ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, *high*	**altior**, *higher*	**altissimus**, *highest*
fēlīx, *happy*	**fēlīcior**, *happier*	**fēlīcissimus**, *happiest*

121 Participles used as Adjectives are compared in the same way:

amāns, *loving*	**amantior**, *more loving*	**amantissimus**, *most loving*

122 But Adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nominative of the Positive:

līber, *free*	**līberior**	**līberrimus**
ācer, *sharp*	**ācrior**	**ācerrimus**

123 Six Adjectives in **-ilis** form the Superlative by adding **-limus** to the stem of the Positive less its final vowel:

facilis, *easy*	**facilior**	**facillimus**
difficilis, *difficult*	**difficilior**	**difficillimus**
similis, *like*	**similior**	**simillimus**
dissimilis, *unlike*	**dissimilior**	**dissimillimus**
humilis, *low*	**humilior**	**humillimus**
gracilis, *slender*	**gracilior**	**gracillimus**

124 Adjectives in **-dicus, -ficus, -volus** are compared as if ending in **-dīcēns, -ficēns, -volēns**:

maledicus, *slanderous*	**maledīcentior**	**maledīcentissimus**
māgnificus, *magnificent*	**māgnificentior**	**māgnificentissimus**
benevolus, *kindly*	**benevolentior**	**benevolentissimus**

Also

egēnus, *needy*	**egentior**	**egentissimus**
prōvidus, *foreseeing*	**prōvidentior**	**prōvidentissimus**

Irregular and Defective Comparison

125 The following are Irregular in Comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, *good*	**melior**	**optimus**
malus, *bad*	**pējor**	**pessimus**
māgnus, *large*	**mājor**	**māximus**
parvus, *small*	**minor**	**minimus**
multus, *much*	**plūs**	**plūrimus**
frūgī, *thrifty*	**frūgālior**	**frūgālissimus**
nēquam, *worthless*	**nēquior**	**nēquissimus**

126 The following are Defective in Comparison:

1. No Positive.

———	**prior**, *former*	**prīmus**, *first*
———	**citerior**, *hither*	**citimus**, *hithermost*
———	**ulterior**, *farther*	**ultimus**, *farthest, last*
———	**interior**, *inner*	**intimus**, *inmost*
———	**propior**, *nearer*	**proximus**, *nearest, next*
———	**dēterior**, *inferior*	**dēterrimus**, *worst*
———	**potior**, *preferable*	**potissimus**, *best*
———	**ōcior**, *swifter*	**ōcissimus**, *swiftest*

2. Positive Rare.

(**posterī**)	**posterior**, *later*	**postrēmus**, *latest, last* **postumus**, *late-born*
(**exterī**)	**exterior**, *outer*	**extrēmus** / **extimus** } *outermost*
(**īnferī**)	**īnferior**, *lower*	**īnfimus** / **īmus** } *lowest*
(**superī**)	**superior**, *higher*	**suprēmus**, *last* **summus**, *highest*

127 3. No Comparative.

vetus, *old*	———	**veterrimus**
novus, *new*	———	**novissimus**
fīdus, *faithful*	———	**fīdissimus**
falsus, *false*	———	**falsissimus**
sacer, *sacred*	———	**sacerrimus**
pius, *good*	———	**piissimus**

128 4. No Superlative.

alacer, *lively*	**alacrior**	———
ingēns, *huge*	**ingentior**	———
prōnus, *inclined*	**prōnior**	———
juvenis, *young*	**jūnior**	[Use **nātū minimus**]
senex, *old*	**senior**	[Use **nātū māximus**]

Comparison by **magis** *and* **māximē**

129 Some Adjectives have no endings of Comparison, and use instead the Adverbs **magis**, *more*, and **māximē**, *most*. They include most Adjectives in **-eus**, **-ius**, **-uus** (except **-quus**), as

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
idōneus, *fit*	**magis idōneus**	**māximē idōneus**

NUMERALS

130 Numerals include Numeral Adjectives and Numeral Adverbs.

Numeral Adjectives are of three kinds:

Cardinal: as **ūnus**, *one*, **duo**, *two*, **trēs**, *three*.
Ordinal: as **prīmus**, *first*, **secundus**, *second*.
Distributive: as **singulī**, *one by one*.

Declension of Numeral Adjectives

131 The only Cardinals declined are **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, and the hundreds above **centum**. The latter are declined like the plural of **bonus**: **ducentī**, **-ae**, **-a**, *two hundred*.

ūnus, *one*, *alone*, *the only*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**	**ūnī**	**ūnae**	**ūna**
Gen.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnōrum**	**ūnārum**	**ūnōrum**
Dat.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnīs**	**ūnīs**	**ūnīs**
Acc.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**	**ūnōs**	**ūnās**	**ūna**
Abl.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**	**ūnīs**	**ūnīs**	**ūnīs**

duo, *two*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**
Gen.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**
Dat.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**
Acc.	**duōs**, **duo**	**duās**	**duo**
Abl.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**

trēs, *three*

M. and F.	N.
trēs	**tria**
trium	**trium**
tribus	**tribus**
trēs, **trīs**	**tria**
tribus	**tribus**

ambō, *both*, is declined like **duo**.

132 *Table of Numerals*

	Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives	Adverbs
I.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	prīmus, *first*	singulī, *one by one*	semel, *once*
II.	duo, duae, duo	secundus, *second*	bīnī, *two by two*	bis, *twice*
III.	trēs, tria	tertius, *third*	ternī (trīnī)	ter, *thrice*
IV.	quattuor	quārtus, *fourth*	quaternī	quater
V.	quīnque	quīntus	quīnī	quīnquiēs
VI.	sex	sextus	sēnī	sexiēs
VII.	septem	septimus	septēnī	septiēs
VIII.	octō	octāvus	octōnī	octiēs
IX.	novem	nōnus	novēnī	noviēs
X.	decem	decimus	dēnī	deciēs
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī	ūndeciēs
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī	duodeciēs
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī	terdeciēs
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī	quater deciēs
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī	quīnquiēs deciēs
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī	sexiēs deciēs
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī	septiēs deciēs
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus	duodēvīcēnī	octiēs deciēs
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus	ūndēvīcēnī	noviēs deciēs
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus	vīcēnī	vīciēs
XXI.	vīgintī ūnus ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus ūnus et vīcēsimus	vīcēnī singulī singulī et vīcēnī	vīciēs semel
XXII.	vīgintī duo duo et vīgintī	vīcēsimus secundus alter et vīcēsimus	vīcēnī bīnī bīnī et vīcēnī	vīciēs bis
XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus	trīcēnī	trīciēs
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēs
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	quīnquāgēnī	quīnquāgiēs
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī	sexāgiēs
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī	septuāgiēs
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī	octōgiēs
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēs
C.	centum	centēsimus	centēnī	centiēs
CI.	centum ūnus	centēsimus prīmus	centēnī singulī	centiēs semel
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī	ducentiēs
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecēnī	trecentiēs
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī	quadringentiēs
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	quīngēnī	quīngentiēs
DC.	sēscentī	sēscentēsimus	sēscēnī	sēscentiēs
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī	septingentiēs
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī	octingentiēs
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī	nōngentiēs
M.	mīlle	mīllēsimus	singula mīlia	mīlliēs
MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus	bīna mīlia	bis mīlliēs

133 **mīlle**, *thousand*, in its singular form is indeclinable, and usually an adjective. Thus **mīlle mīlitēs**, *a thousand soldiers*. Its plural, **mīlia**, is a noun, and is declined **mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, mīlia, mīlia, mīlibus**. Thus **duo mīlia** means *two thousands* of anything. The things thus numbered usually go in the Genitive: **duo mīlia mīlitum**, *two thousand soldiers*.

134 All Ordinals are declined like **bonus**; all Distributives like the plural of **bonus**.

135 The following signs and their combinations are used for the various numbers: I = 1, V = 5, X = 10, L = 50, C = 100, D = 500, M = 1,000. In combining these the larger numeral regularly precedes. Thus VI = 6, XVI = 16, LVI = 56, and so on. When the smaller numeral precedes, it is to be read by subtraction. This occurs in the numerals IV = 4, IX = 9, XL = 40, XC = 90, and their combinations. Thus XCIX = 99.

PRONOUNS

136 Pronouns are divided into—

I. Personal and Reflexive
II. Possessive
III. Demonstrative
IV. Intensive
V. Relative
VI. Interrogative
VII. Indefinite

I. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE

137 The Personal Pronouns are **ego**, *I*, the pronoun of the first person, and **tū**, *thou*, the pronoun of the second person. There is no personal

pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken by the Demonstratives is and ille (see 141).

	ego, *I*	tū, *thou*
Sing.		
Nom.	**ego** *I*	**tū** *thou, you*
Gen.	**meī** *of me*	**tuī** *of you*
Dat.	**mihi, mī** *to, for me*	**tibi** *to, for you*
Acc.	**mē** *me*	**tē** *you*
Voc.	—— ——	**tū** *O you*
Abl.	**mē** *with, from, by me*	**tē** *with, from, by you*
Plural		
Nom.	**nōs** *we*	**vōs** *ye, you*
Gen.	**nostrum, nostrī** *of us*	**vestrum, vestrī** *of you*
Dat.	**nōbīs** *to, for us*	**vōbīs** *to, for you*
Acc.	**nōs** *us*	**vōs** *you*
Voc.	—— ——	**vōs** *O ye, you*
Abl.	**nōbīs** *with, from, by us*	**vōbīs** *with, from, by you*

nostrum and **vestrum** usually have a Partitive meaning: **quis nostrum**, *who of us?*

138 The Reflexive Pronouns of the first and second persons are supplied from the Personal Pronouns. The Reflexive of the third person is **suī**, *of himself (herself, itself, themselves)*.

	meī, (*of*) *myself*	tuī, (*of*) *yourself*	suī, (*of*) *himself*
Sing.			
Gen.	meī	tuī	suī
Dat.	mihi	tibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
Abl.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
Plural			
Gen.	nostrum, -ī	vestrum, -ī	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

139 The Possessive Pronouns are formed from the Personal Pronouns. They are—

meus, *my*	**noster**, *our*	for the first person
tuus, *thy*	**vester**, *your*	for the second person
suus, *his, theirs*		for the third person

They are really Adjectives, and are declined like **bonus** and **līber**. See **108, 109**. The Vocative Singular Masculine of **meus** is **mī**.

140 **suus** is used only in a Reflexive sense, usually referring to the subject of the sentence in which it stands. See **421**. Thus **fīlium suum laudat** means *he praises his* (*own*) *son*, but **fīlium illīus laudat** means *he praises his* (*another person's*) *son*.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

141 These point out persons or things with regard to where they are. The Demonstratives are—

hīc, *this* (near me)	for the first person
iste, *that* (near you)	for the second person
ille, *that* (near him)	for the third person

Also **is**, *that* (like **ille**, but less definite).

īdem, *that same, the same* (made of **is** + **-dem**).

They have no Vocative. The forms of **is** and **ille** often mean *he*, *she*, *it*, or *they*. See **137**.

142 **hīc**, *this* (*of mine*)

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	**hīc**	**haec**	**hōc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**hūjus**	**hūjus**	**hūjus**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hōc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

143 **iste**, *that (of yours)*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	**iste**	**ista**	**istud**	**istī**	**istae**	**ista**
Gen.	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istōrum**	**istārum**	**istōrum**
Dat.	**istī**	**istī**	**istī**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**
Acc.	**istum**	**istam**	**istud**	**istōs**	**istās**	**ista**
Abl.	**istō**	**istā**	**istō**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**

ille, *that one, he*, is declined like **iste**.

144 **is**, *that one, he*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī, iī**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**ējus**	**ējus**	**ējus**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**
Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**

145 **īdem**, *the same*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	**īdem**	**eadem**	**idem**	**eīdem** **iīdem**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
Gen.	**ējusdem**	**ējusdem**	**ējusdem**	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīsdem** **iīsdem**	**eīsdem** **iīsdem**	**eīsdem** **iīsdem**
Acc.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eadem**
Abl.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**eīsdem** **iīsdem**	**eīsdem** **iīsdem**	**eīsdem** **iīsdem**

146 IV. INTENSIVE PRONOUN

The Intensive Pronoun **ipse**, *self*, *self-same*, is declined like **iste**, except that the Nominative and Accusative Singular Neuter is **ipsum**.

ipse, *himself*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
Gen.	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
Acc.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsa**
Abl.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

147 V. RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cūjus**	**cūjus**	**cūjus**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

The old Ablative **quī** for all genders sometimes occurs. Also **quīs** instead of **quibus**.

VI. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

148 The Interrogative Pronouns are **quis**, *who?* which is used as a Noun, and **quī**, *what (sort of)?* which is used as an Adjective.

quis, *who?*

Sing.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	**quis**	**quid**
Gen.	**cūjus**	**cūjus**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**
Acc.	**quem**	**quid**
Abl.	**quō**	**quō**

The Interrogative **quis**, *who?* in the plural, and **quī**, *what (sort of)?* in both numbers, are declined in the same way as the Relative **quī**.

VII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

149 The Indefinite Pronouns are **quis** and **quī**, *any one, some one*, and their compounds. The principal Indefinite Pronouns are

quis, *any one*
aliquis, *some one*
quisquam, *any one*
quisque, *each*
quispiam, *any one*
quisquis, *whoever*

quī (adjective), *any*
aliquī (adjective), *any*
quīdam, *a certain one*
quīlibet, *which you please*
quīvīs, *which you will*
quīcumque, *whoever*

Also **ecquis**, (*whether*) *any*
nē quis, (*lest*) *any*
sī quis, (*if*) *any*
nesciō quis, *some one or other*

150 **quīdam** has Accusative singular **quendam**, **quandam**, and Genitive plural **quōrundam**, **quārundam**.

quis and **aliquis** have the ending **-a** instead of **-ae** in the Nominative Singular Feminine and the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter.

quisquis is used in the Singular only.

Pronominal and Correlative Adjectives

151 The following Pronominal Adjectives are conveniently added here (see **112**):

alter, *the other*	**alius**, *another*
uter, *which*	**neuter**, *neither*
ūllus, *any*	**nūllus**, *none, no*

152 Also these pairs of Correlatives (see **154**):

tālis, *of such kind*	**quālis**, *as*
tantus, *so great*	**quantus**, *as*
tot, *so many*	**quot**, *as*

153 *Tables of Pronouns*

Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, Demonstrative

	Personal	Reflexive	Possessive	Demonstrative
Of First Person	**ego**	**meī**	**meus noster**	**hīc**
Of Second Person	**tū**	**tuī**	**tuus vester**	**iste**
Of Third Person	**(ille)**	**suī**	**suus**	**ille**

154 A Relative or Interrogative is often paired with a corresponding Demonstrative; as **quantus**, *how great*, **tantus**, *so great*; **ex quō**, *from what (time)*, **ex illō**, *from that (time)*. Such pairs are called Correlatives. The following are important to remember:

Correlative Pairs

	Relative or Interrogative	Demonstrative
Simple	**quī, quis**	**hīc, iste, ille, is**
Number (how many)	**quot**	**tot**
Quantity (how large)	**quantus**	**tantus**
Quality (what kind)	**quālis**	**tālis**

VERBS

155 The Verb (**verbum**, *the* word) is the chief word in Latin, as in other languages. It alone brings out a complete thought, and hence can make a sentence by itself. It has greater changes of form than any other Part of Speech. Its Inflection is called Conjugation.

156 A Verb changes its form in five ways—by Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

There are

Two Voices :	Active,	Passive.	
Three Moods :	Indicative,	Subjunctive,	Imperative.
Six Tenses :	Present,	Imperfect,	Future,
	Perfect,	Pluperfect,	Future Perfect.
Two Numbers :	Singular,	Plural.	
Three Persons :	First,	Second,	Third.

157 To these five forms of change which constitute the entire Verb proper, usually called the Finite Verb, are to be added :

Verbal forms used as Nouns : Infinitive, Gerund, Supine.
Verbal forms used as Adjectives : Participle and Gerundive.

VOICES

158 The Active Voice is used to express the Subject of the Verb as acting or being. Thus **amō**, *I love*, **est**, *he is*.

The Passive Voice is used to express the Subject of the Verb as acted upon. Thus **amor**, *I am loved.*

Transitive Verbs are conjugated in both Voices, Intransitive Verbs almost entirely in the Active. A Transitive Verb is one which takes a Direct Object to fill out its meaning: **illum videō**, *I see him.* Intransitive Verbs, from their meaning, do not take a Direct Object: **maneō**, *I remain.*

MOODS

159 The Indicative Mood states the action of the Verb as a fact: **amō**, *I love,* **amābō**, *I shall love.*

The Subjunctive Mood states the action of the Verb as willed, desired, or possible: **amet**, *let him love, may he love, he may love.*

The Imperative Mood states the action of the Verb as a command: **amā**, *love thou!*

TENSES

160 The six Tenses are used to express the *Action* of the Verb as Uncompleted or Completed.

1. Three for Uncompleted Action:

Present:	**amō**, *I love* (*I am loving, I do love*).
Imperfect:	**amābam**, *I was loving* (*I loved*).
Future:	**amābō**, *I shall love.*

2. Three for Completed Action:

Perfect:	**amāvī**, *I have loved, I loved.*
Pluperfect:	**amāveram**, *I had loved.*
Future Perfect:	**amāverō**, *I shall have loved.*

The Indicative Mood has all six Tenses, the Subjunctive four (no Future and Future Perfect), and the Imperative only two—the Present and Future.

The Perfect Tense has two uses:

1. The Present Perfect—the Perfect with *have*: **amāvī**, *I have loved.*

2. The Past or Historical Perfect: **amāvī**, *I loved.*

161 The six Tenses are also used to express the *Time* of the Verb as Past, Present, or Future. Those which express Present or Future time are called Principal Tenses, and those which express Past time are called Historical Tenses.

The Principal Tenses are the

Present:	**amō**, *I love.*
Present Perfect:	**amāvī**, *I have loved.*
Future:	**amābō**, *I shall love.*
Future Perfect:	**amāverō**, *I shall have loved.*

The Historical Tenses are the

Imperfect:	**amābam**, *I was loving.*
Historical Perfect:	**amāvī**, *I loved.*
Pluperfect:	**amāveram**, *I had loved.*

NUMBERS AND PERSONS

162 Verbs have two Numbers, the Singular and Plural:

Thus **amat**, *he loves*, **amant**, *they love*.

163 Verbs have three Persons, the First, Second, and Third:

Thus **amō**, *I love*, **amās**, *you love*, **amat**, *he loves*.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS

164 Verbs change their form, or are conjugated, by adding Personal Endings (usually combined with Signs of Tense and Mood) to the different Stems.

I. STEMS

165 A complete Verb has three Stems—the Present Stem, the Perfect Stem, and the Participial Stem.

166 In regular Verbs the Present or simple Stem is changed into the Perfect Stem by adding **v** (**u**) or **s**, and into the Participial Stem by adding **t**.

PRESENT STEM	PERFECT STEM	PARTICIPIAL STEM
amā-, *love*	**amāv-**, *loved*	**amāt-**
monē-, *advise*	**monu-**, *advised*	**mon(i)t-**
dūc-, *lead*	**dūx-** (= **dūcs**), *led*	**duct-**
audī-, *hear*	**audīv-**, *heard*	**audīt-**

These changes are sometimes connected with other changes, which are to be learned as they happen in the different Conjugations.

II. TENSE AND MOOD SIGNS[1]

167 The different Tenses and Moods are shown by the part between the Stem and the Ending. Thus **-bi-** serves as a sign of the Future Indicative: **amā-bi-t** (*love-will-he*), *he will love.*

The Tense and Mood Signs of the Finite Verb are given in the following tables:

1. Those joined to the Present Stem in both Active and Passive Voices.

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
Present	——	-ă̆- -ē̆-	——
Imperfect	-(ē)bă̆-	-rē̆-	tense lacking
Future	-bi- -ē̆- (-a-)	tense lacking	-tō-

2. Those joined to the Perfect Stem in the Active Voice.

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Perfect	-ĭ̆-	-eri-
Pluperfect	-eră̆-	-issē̆-
Future Perfect	-eri-	tense lacking

For Tense and Mood Signs of the Imperative see **168**.

[1] The term Tense and Mood Sign, while not a scientifically accurate expression, is a convenient name for that part of the Verb which, in the developed classical language, actually distinguishes the various Tenses and Moods. An analysis of the formative elements of the Tenses and Moods is too complicated and vexed a problem for an elementary grammar.

3. In the Passive Voice the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses are formed by adding forms of **sum** to the Perfect Passive Participle. Thus **amātus sum**, *I have been loved*; **amātus eram**, *I had been loved.*

All Participles and Participial forms of the Verb are declined like Adjectives. Thus:

amāns, genitive **amantis** (116)
amātūrus, -a, -um (sum)
amātus, -a, -um (sum)
amandus, -a, -um (sum)

III. PERSONAL ENDINGS

168 The Personal Endings denote Voice, Person, and Number. They are given in the following table:

	Active				Passive			
	Ind. & Sub.		Imperative		Ind. & Sub.		Imperative	
Person	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Plural
First	**-m, -ŏ**	**-mus**	*not used*	*not used*	**-r**	**-mur**	*not used*	*not used*
Second	**-s**	**-tis**	—, **-tō**	**-tē, -tōte**	**-ris, -re**	**-minī**	**-re, -tor**	**-minī**
Third	**-t**	**-nt**	**-tō**	**-ntō**	**-tur**	**-ntur**	**-tor**	**-ntor**

The Endings for the Imperative are given combined with the Tense and Mood Sign, where it occurs.

169 The Perfect Indicative Active is formed as follows:

	Singular	Plural
First Person	**-ī**	**-imus**
Second Person	**-istī**	**-istis**
Third Person	**-it**	**-ērunt, -ēre**

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

170 The four Conjugations are known apart by the first vowel in the ending of the Present Infinitive Active.

	Infinitive Ending	Examples
First Conjugation, in **ā**	**-āre**	**amāre**, *to love*
Second Conjugation, in **ē**	**-ēre**	**monēre**, *to advise*
Third Conjugation, in **e**	**-ere**	**regere**, *to rule*
Fourth Conjugation, in **ī**	**-īre**	**audīre**, *to hear*

171 The Principal Parts are single forms chosen to show the three Stems from which all forms of the Verb may be made by adding the proper endings. The Principal Parts are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Perfect Participle. Thus:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Part.
amō	**amāre**	**amāvī**	**amātus**
moneō	**monēre**	**monuī**	**monitus**
regō	**regere**	**rēxī**	**rēctus**
audiō	**audīre**	**audīvī**	**audītus**

Notice that the Present Indicative is given mainly to show the first form occurring in the Verb—so to speak, the *name* of the Verb.

The Present Infinitive shows the Present Stem.

The Perfect Indicative shows the Perfect Stem.

The Perfect Participle shows the Participial Stem.

The Present System includes all parts of the Verb formed on the Present Stem, the Perfect System includes all parts formed on the Perfect Stem, and the Participial System all parts formed on the Participial Stem.

SYNOPSIS OF THE REGULAR VERB

I. Present System: Active and Passive Voices

Conjugations	First Stem **amā-**		Second Stem **monē-**		Third Stem **reg-**		Fourth Stem **audī-**	
	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Present Indicative	amō	-or	moneō	-eor	regō	-or	audiō	-ior
Imperfect Indicative	**ābam**	**-ābar**	**ēbam**	**-ēbar**	**ēbam**	**-ēbar**	**iēbam**	**-iēbar**
Future Indicative	**ābō**	**-ābor**	**ēbō**	**-ēbor**	**am**	**-ar**	**iam**	**-iar**
Present Subjunctive	**em**	**-er**	**eam**	**-ear**	**am**	**-ar**	**iam**	**-iar**
Imperfect Subjunctive	**ārem**	**-ārer**	**ērem**	**-ērer**	**erem**	**-erer**	**īrem**	**-īrer**
Imperative	**ā**	**-āre**	**ē**	**-ēre**	**e**	**-ere**	**ī**	**-īre**
Present Infinitive	**āre**	**-ārī**	**ēre**	**-ērī**	**ere**	**-ī**	**īre**	**-īrī**
Present Participle	**āns**	——	**ēns**	——	**ēns**	——	**iēns**	——
Gerund	**andī**	——	**endī**	——	**endī**	——	**iendī**	——
Gerundive	——	**-andus**	——	**-endus**	——	**-endus**	——	**-iendus**

II. Perfect System: Active Voice

Conjugations	First Stem **amāv-**	Second Stem **monu-**	Third Stem **rēx-**	Fourth Stem **audīv-**
Perfect Indicative	amāvī	monuī	rēxī	audīvī
Pluperfect Indicative	**eram**	**eram**	**eram**	**eram**
Future Perfect Indicative	**erō**	**erō**	**erō**	**erō**
Perfect Subjunctive	**erim**	**erim**	**erim**	**erim**
Pluperfect Subjunctive	**issem**	**issem**	**issem**	**issem**
Perfect Infinitive	**isse**	**isse**	**isse**	**isse**

III. Participal System: Active and Passive Voices. (*See also* **167. 3.**)

	First Stem **amāt-**	Second Stem **monit-**	Third Stem **rēct-**	Fourth Stem **audīt-**
Future Infinitive Active	amāt**ūrus esse**	monit**ūrus esse**	rēct**ūrus esse**	audīt**ūrus esse**
Future Participle Active	**ūrus**	**ūrus**	**ūrus**	**ūrus**
Supine	**um, -ū**	**um, -ū**	**um, -ū**	**um, -ū**
Future Infinitive Passive	**um īrī**	**um īrī**	**um īrī**	**um īrī**
Perfect Participle Passive	**us**	**us**	**us**	**us**
Perfect Infinitive Passive	**us esse**	**us esse**	**us esse**	**us esse**

THE IRREGULAR VERB SUM

173 As **sum**, *I am*, has to be used in the conjugation of all the regular verbs, it is given first.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
sum	**esse**	**fuī**

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	
sum, *I am*	**sumus**, *we are*
es, *thou art*	**estis**, *you are*
est, *he is*	**sunt**, *they are*
Imperfect	
eram, *I was*	**erāmus**, *we were*
erās, *thou wast*	**erātis**, *you were*
erat, *he was*	**erant**, *they were*
Future	
erō, *I shall be*	**erimus**, *we shall be*
eris, *thou wilt be*	**eritis**, *you will be*
erit, *he will be*	**erunt**, *they will be*
Perfect	
fuī, *I have been, I was*	**fuimus**, *we have been, we were*
fuistī, *thou hast been, thou wast*	**fuistis**, *you have been, you were*
fuit, *he has been, he was*	**fuērunt**, **fuēre**, *they have been, they were*
Pluperfect	
fueram, *I had been*	**fuerāmus**, *we had been*
fuerās, *thou hadst been*	**fuerātis**, *you had been*
fuerat, *he had been*	**fuerant**, *they had been*
Future Perfect	
fuerō, *I shall have been*	**fuerimus**, *we shall have been*
fueris, *thou wilt have been*	**fueritis**, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*	**fuerint**, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim, *I may be*	**sīmus**, *we may be*
sīs, *thou mayst be*	**sītis**, *you may be*
sit, *he may be*	**sint**, *they may be*

Imperfect

essem, *I should be*	**essēmus**, *we should be*
essēs, *thou wouldst be*	**essētis**, *you would be*
esset, *he would be*	**essent**, *they would be*

Perfect

fuerim, *I may have been*	**fuerimus**, *we may have been*
fueris, *thou mayst have been*	**fueritis**, *you may have been*
fuerit, *he may have been*	**fuerint**, *they may have been*

Pluperfect

fuissem, *I should have been*	**fuissēmus**, *we should have been*
fuissēs, *thou wouldst have been*	**fuissētis**, *you would have been*
fuisset, *he would have been*	**fuissent**, *they would have been*

IMPERATIVE

Pres. **es**, *be thou*	**este**, *be ye*
Fut. **estō**, *thou shalt be*	**estōte**, *ye shall be*
estō, *he shall be*	**suntō**, *they shall be*

INFINITIVE

Pres. **esse**, *to be*
Perf. **fuisse**, *to have been*
Fut. **futūrus esse** *or* **fore**, *to be about to be*

PARTICIPLE

Fut. **futūrus**, *about to be*

FIRST CONJUGATION

174

Active Voice.—amō, *I love*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Part.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
amō, *I love*	amāmus, *we love*
amās, *you love*	amātis, *you love*
amat, *he loves*	amant, *they love*

Imperfect

amābam, *I was loving*	amābāmus, *we were loving*
amābās, *you were loving*	amābātis, *you were loving*
amābat, *he was loving*	amābant, *they were loving*

Future

amābō, *I shall love*	amābimus, *we shall love*
amābis, *you will love*	amābitis, *you will love*
amābit, *he will love*	amābunt, *they will love*

Perfect

amāvī, *I have loved, I loved*	amāvimus, *we have loved, we loved*
amāvistī, *you have loved, you loved*	amāvistis, *you have loved, you loved*
amāvit, *he has loved, he loved*	amāvērunt, *or* -ēre, *they have loved, they loved*

Pluperfect

amāveram, *I had loved*	amāverāmus, *we had loved*
amāverās, *you had loved*	amāverātis, *you had loved*
amāverat, *he had loved*	amāverant, *they had loved*

Future Perfect

amāverō, *I shall have loved*	amāverimus, *we shall have loved*
amāveris, *you will have loved*	amāveritis, *you will have loved*
amāverit, *he will have loved*	amāverint, *they will have loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
am**em**, *I may love*	am**ēmus**, *we may love*
am**ēs**, *you may love*	am**ētis**, *you may love*
am**et**, *he may love*	am**ent**, *they may love*

Imperfect

am**ārem**, *I should love*	am**ārēmus**, *we should love*
am**ārēs**, *you would love*	am**ārētis**, *you would love*
am**āret**, *he would love*	am**ārent**, *they would love*

Perfect

amāv**erim**, *I may have loved*	amāv**erimus**, *we may have loved*
amāv**eris**, *you may have loved*	amāv**eritis**, *you may have loved*
amāv**erit**, *he may have loved*	amāv**erint**, *they may have loved*

Pluperfect

amāv**issem**, *I should have loved*	amāv**issēmus**, *we should have loved*
amāv**issēs**, *you would have loved*	amāv**issētis**, *you would have loved*
amāv**isset**, *he would have loved*	amāv**issent**, *they would have loved*

IMPERATIVE

Pres. amā, *love thou*	am**āte**, *love ye*
Fut. am**ātō**, *thou shalt love*	am**ātōte**, *ye shall love*
am**ātō**, *he shall love*	am**antō**, *they shall love*

INFINITIVE

Pres. am**āre**, *to love*	*Pres.* am**āns**, *loving*
Perf. amāv**isse**, *to have loved*	
Fut. amāt**ūrus esse**, *to be about to love*	*Fut.* amāt**ūrus**, *about to love*

GERUND

SUPINE

Gen. am**andī**, *of loving*	
Dat. am**andō**, *for loving*	
Acc. am**andum**, *loving*	*Acc.* amāt**um**, *to love*
Abl. am**andō**, *by loving*	*Abl.* amāt**ū**, *to love, in the loving*

175 FIRST CONJUGATION

Passive Voice.—amor, *I am loved*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
amor	amārī	amātus sum

INDICATIVE

singular		plural
	Present	
	I am loved	
amor		amāmur
amāris, *or* -re		amāminī
amātur		amantur
	Imperfect	
	I was loved	
amābar		amābāmur
amābāris, *or* -re		amābāminī
amābātur		amābantur
	Future	
	I shall be loved	
amābor		amābimur
amāberis, *or* -re		amābiminī
amābitur		amābuntur
	Perfect	
	I have been loved or *I was loved*	
amātus sum		amātī sumus
amātus es		amātī estis
amātus est		amātī sunt
	Pluperfect	
	I had been loved	
amātus eram		amātī erāmus
amātus erās		amātī erātis
amātus erat		amātī erant
	Future Perfect	
	I shall have been loved	
amātus erō		amātī erimus
amātus eris		amātī eritis
amātus erit		amātī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

I may be loved

SINGULAR	PLURAL
amer	amēmur
amēris, *or* -re	amēminī
amētur	amentur

Imperfect

I should be loved

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, *or* -re	amārēminī
amārētur	amārentur

Perfect

I may have been loved

amātus sim	amātī sīmus
amātus sīs	amātī sītis
amātus sit	amātī sint

Pluperfect

I should have been loved

amātus essem	amātī essēmus
amātus essēs	amātī essētis
amātus esset	amātī essent

IMPERATIVE

Pres. amāre, *be thou loved*	amāminī, *be ye loved*
Fut. amātor, *thou shalt be loved*	
amātor, *he shall be loved*	amantor, *they shall be loved*

INFINITIVE

Pres. amārī, *to be loved*	
Perf. amātus esse, *to have been loved*	
Fut. amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved*	

PARTICIPLE

Perfect.	amātus, *loved*
Gerundive.	amandus, *to be loved, deserving to be loved*

176 SECOND CONJUGATION

Active Voice.—moneō, *I advise*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Part.
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus

INDICATIVE

singular		plural
	Present	
	I advise	
moneō		monēmus
monēs		monētis
monet		monent
	Imperfect	
	I was advising, or *I advised*	
monēbam		monēbāmus
monēbās		monēbātis
monēbat		monēbant
	Future	
	I shall advise	
monēbō		monēbimus
monēbis		monēbitis
monēbit		monēbunt
	Perfect	
	I have advised, or *I advised*	
monuī		monuimus
monuistī		monuistis
monuit		monuērunt, *or* -ēre
	Pluperfect	
	I had advised	
monueram		monuerāmus
monuerās		monuerātis
monuerat		monuerant
	Future Perfect	
	I shall have advised	
monuerō		monuerimus
monueris		monueritis
monuerit		monuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	
I may advise	
mone**am**	mone**āmus**
mone**ās**	mone**ātis**
mone**at**	mone**ant**
Imperfect	
I should advise	
mon**ērem**	mon**ērēmus**
mon**ērēs**	mon**ērētis**
mon**ēret**	mon**ērent**
Perfect	
I may have advised	
monu**erim**	monu**erimus**
monu**eris**	monu**eritis**
monu**erit**	monu**erint**
Pluperfect	
I should have advised	
monu**issem**	monu**issēmus**
monu**issēs**	monu**issētis**
monu**isset**	monu**issent**

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	mon**ē**, *advise thou*	mon**ēte**, *advise ye*
Fut.	mon**ētō**, *thou shalt advise*	mon**ētōte**, *ye shall advise*
	mon**ētō**, *he shall advise*	mon**entō**, *they shall advise*

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. mon**ēre**, *to advise*	*Pres.* mon**ēns**, *advising*
Perf. monu**isse**, *to have advised*	
Fut. monit**ūrus esse**, *to be about to advise*	*Fut.* monit**ūrus**, *about to advise*

GERUND	SUPINE
Gen. mone**ndī**, *of advising*	
Dat. mone**ndō**, *for advising*	
Acc. mone**ndum**, *advising*	*Acc.* monit**um**, *to advise*
Abl. mone**ndō**, *by advising*	*Abl.* monit**ū**, *to advise, in the advising*

177 SECOND CONJUGATION

Passive Voice.—moneor, *I am advised*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
moneor	monērī	monitus sum

INDICATIVE

singular		plural
	Present	
	I am advised	
moneor		monēmur
monēris, *or* -re		monēminī
monētur		monentur
	Imperfect	
	I was advised	
monēbar		monēbāmur
monēbāris, *or* -re		monēbāminī
monēbātur		monēbantur
	Future	
	I shall be advised	
monēbor		monēbimur
monēberis, *or* -re		monēbiminī
monēbitur		monēbuntur
	Perfect	
	I have been advised, I was advised	
monitus sum		monitī sumus
monitus es		monitī estis
monitus est		monitī sunt
	Pluperfect	
	I had been advised	
monitus eram		monitī erāmus
monitus erās		monitī erātis
monitus erat		monitī erant
	Future Perfect	
	I shall have been advised	
monitus erō		monitī erimus
monitus eris		monitī eritis
monitus erit		monitī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

I may be advised

SINGULAR	PLURAL
mone**ar**	mone**āmur**
mone**āris**, *or* **-re**	mone**āminī**
mone**ātur**	mone**antur**

Imperfect

I should be advised

monē**rer**	monē**rēmur**
monē**rēris**, *or* **-re**	monē**rēminī**
monē**rētur**	monē**rentur**

Perfect

I may have been advised

monit**us sim**	monitī **sīmus**
monit**us sīs**	monitī **sītis**
monit**us sit**	monitī **sint**

Pluperfect

I should have been advised

monit**us essem**	monitī **essēmus**
monit**us essēs**	monitī **essētis**
monit**us esset**	monitī **essent**

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	monē**re**, *be thou advised*	monē**minī**, *be ye advised*
Fut.	monē**tor**, *thou shalt be advised*	
	monē**tor**, *he shall be advised*	mone**ntor**, *they shall be advised*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	monē**rī**, *to be advised*
Perf.	monit**us esse**, *to have been advised*
Fut.	monit**um īrī**, *to be about to be advised*

PARTICIPLE

Perfect.	monit**us**, *advised*
Gerundive.	mone**ndus**, *to be advised, deserving to be advised*

178

THIRD CONJUGATION

Active Voice.—regō, *I rule*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Part.
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus

INDICATIVE

singular		plural
	Present	
	I rule	
regō		regimus
regis		regitis
regit		regunt
	Imperfect	
	I was ruling, or *I ruled*	
regēbam		regēbāmus
regēbās		regēbātis
regēbat		regēbant
	Future	
	I shall rule	
regam		regēmus
regēs		regētis
reget		regent
	Perfect	
	I have ruled, or *I ruled*	
rēxī		rēximus
rēxistī		rēxistis
rēxit		rēxērunt, *or* -ēre
	Pluperfect	
	I had ruled	
rēxeram		rēxerāmus
rēxerās		rēxerātis
rēxerat		rēxerant
	Future Perfect	
	I shall have ruled	
rēxerō		rēxerimus
rēxeris		rēxeritis
rēxerit		rēxerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	PRESENT	
	I may rule	
regam		regāmus
regās		regātis
regat		regant
	IMPERFECT	
	I should rule	
regerem		regerēmus
regerēs		regerētis
regeret		regerent
	PERFECT	
	I may have ruled	
rēxerim		rēxerimus
rēxeris		rēxeritis
rēxerit		rēxerint
	PLUPERFECT	
	I should have ruled	
rēxissem		rēxissēmus
rēxissēs		rēxissētis
rēxisset		rēxissent

IMPERATIVE

Pres. rege, *rule thou*	regite, *rule ye*
Fut. regitō, *thou shalt rule*	regitōte, *ye shall rule*
regitō, *he shall rule*	reguntō, *they shall rule*

INFINITIVE

Pres. regere, *to rule*
Perf. rēxisse, *to have ruled*
Fut. rēctūrus esse, *to be about to rule*

PARTICIPLE

Pres. regēns, *ruling*
Fut. rēctūrus, *about to rule*

GERUND

Gen. regendī, *of ruling*
Dat. regendō, *for ruling*
Acc. regendum, *ruling*
Abl. regendō, *by ruling*

SUPINE

Acc. rēctum, *to rule*
Abl. rēctū, *to rule, in the ruling*

179 THIRD CONJUGATION

Passive Voice.—regor, *I am ruled*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
regor	regī	rēctus sum

INDICATIVE

	Present	
singular	*I am ruled*	plural
regor		regimur
regeris, *or* -re		regiminī
regitur		reguntur
	Imperfect	
	I was ruled	
regēbar		regēbāmur
regēbāris, *or* -re		regēbāminī
regēbātur		regēbantur
	Future	
	I shall be ruled	
regar		regēmur
regēris, *or* -re		regēminī
regētur		regentur
	Perfect	
	I have been ruled, or *I was ruled*	
rēctus sum		rēctī sumus
rēctus es		rēctī estis
rēctus est		rēctī sunt
	Pluperfect	
	I had been ruled	
rēctus eram		rēctī erāmus
rēctus erās		rēctī erātis
rēctus erat		rēctī erant
	Future Perfect	
	I shall have been ruled	
rēctus erō		rēctī erimus
rēctus eris		rēctī eritis
rēctus erit		rēctī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

I may be ruled

SINGULAR	PLURAL
regar	regāmur
regāris, *or* -re	regāminī
regātur	regantur

Imperfect

I should be ruled

regerer	regerēmur
regerēris, *or* -re	regerēminī
regerētur	regerentur

Perfect

I may have been ruled

rēctus sim	rēctī sīmus
rēctus sīs	rēctī sītis
rēctus sit	rēctī sint

Pluperfect

I should have been ruled

rēctus essem	rēctī essēmus
rēctus essēs	rēctī essētis
rēctus esset	rēctī essent

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	rege, *be thou ruled*	regiminī, *be ye ruled*
Fut.	regitor, *thou shalt be ruled*	
	regitor, *he shall be ruled*	reguntor, *they shall be ruled*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	regī, *to be ruled*
Perf.	rēctus esse, *to have been ruled*
Fut.	rēctum īrī, *to be about to be ruled*

PARTICIPLE

Perfect.	rēctus, *ruled*
Gerundive.	regendus, *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled*

180 FOURTH CONJUGATION

Active Voice.—audiō, *I hear*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Part.
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus

INDICATIVE

	Present Tense	
SINGULAR	*I hear*	PLURAL
audiō		audīmus
audīs		audītis
audit		audiunt
	Imperfect	
	I was hearing, or *I heard*	
audiēbam		audiēbāmus
audiēbās		audiēbātis
audiēbat		audiēbant
	Future	
	I shall hear	
audiam		audiēmus
audiēs		audiētis
audiet		audient
	Perfect	
	I have heard, or *I heard*	
audīvī		audīvimus
audīvistī		audīvistis
audīvit		audīvērunt, *or* -ēre
	Pluperfect	
	I had heard	
audīveram		audīverāmus
audīverās		audīverātis
audīverat		audīverant
	Future Perfect	
	I shall have heard	
audīverō		audīverimus
audīveris		audīveritis
audīverit		audīverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	PRESENT	
	I may hear	
audiam		audiāmus
audiās		audiātis
audiat		audiant
	IMPERFECT	
	I should hear	
audīrem		audīrēmus
audīrēs		audīrētis
audīret		audīrent
	PERFECT	
	I may have heard	
audīverim		audīverimus
audīveris		audīveritis
audīverit		audīverint
	PLUPERFECT	
	I should have heard	
audīvissem		audīvissēmus
audīvissēs		audīvissētis
audīvisset		audīvissent

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	audī, *hear thou*	audīte, *hear ye*
Fut.	audītō, *thou shalt hear*	audītōte, *ye shall hear*
	audītō, *he shall hear*	audiuntō, *they shall hear*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	audīre, *to hear*
Perf.	audīvisse, *to have heard*
Fut.	audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear*

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	audiēns, *hearing*
Fut.	audītūrus, *about to hear*

GERUND

Gen.	audiendī, *of hearing*
Dat.	audiendō, *for hearing*
Acc.	audiendum, *hearing*
Abl.	audiendō, *by hearing*

SUPINE

Acc.	audītum, *to hear*
Abl.	audītū, *to hear, in the hearing*

181 FOURTH CONJUGATION

Passive Voice.—audior, *I am heard*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audior	audīrī	audītus sum

INDICATIVE

	Present	
singular	*I am heard*	plural
audior		audīmur
audīris, *or* -re		audīminī
audītur		audiuntur
	Imperfect	
	I was heard	
audiēbar		audiēbāmur
audiēbāris, *or* -re		audiēbāminī
audiēbātur		audiēbantur
	Future	
	I shall be heard	
audiar		audiēmur
audiēris, *or* -re		audiēminī
audiētur		audientur
	Perfect	
	I have been heard, or *I was heard*	
audītus sum		audītī sumus
audītus es		audītī estis
audītus est		audītī sunt
	Pluperfect	
	I had been heard	
audītus eram		audītī erāmus
audītus erās		audītī erātis
audītus erat		audītī erant
	Future Perfect	
	I shall have been heard	
audītus erō		audītī erimus
audītus eris		audītī eritis
audītus erit		audītī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

I may be heard

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris, *or* -re	audiāminī
audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

I should be heard

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris, *or* -re	audīrēminī
audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

I may have been heard

audītus sim	audītī sīmus
audītus sīs	audītī sītis
audītus sit	audītī sint

Pluperfect

I should have been heard

audītus essem	audītī essēmus
audītus essēs	audītī essētis
audītus esset	audītī essent

IMPERATIVE

Pres. audīre, *be thou heard*	audīminī, *be ye heard*
Fut. audītor, *thou shalt be heard*	
audītor, *he shall be heard*	audiuntor, *they shall be heard*

INFINITIVE

Pres. audīrī, *to be heard*	
Perf. audītus esse, *to have been heard*	
Fut. audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard*	

PARTICIPLE

Perfect.	audītus, *heard*
Gerundive.	audiendus, *to be heard, deserving to be heard*

VERBS IN -IŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

182 Some Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in **-iō**. In the Present System (**171**) they take the endings of the Fourth Conjugation whenever these endings contain two successive vowels.

These verbs are—

1. **capiō**, *take* **cupiō**, *desire* **faciō**, *make* **fodiō**, *dig* **fugiō**, *flee* **jaciō**, *throw* **pariō**, *bear* **quatiō**, *shake* **rapiō**, *seize* **sapiō**, *know*; and their compounds.

2. Compounds of **-liciō**, *lure*, and **-spiciō**, *look*. Thus **alliciō**, *allure*, **suspiciō**, *look up at*.

3. The deponent verbs **gradior**, *walk*; **morior**, *die*; **patior**, *suffer*; and their compounds.

183 **Active Voice.**—capiō, *I take*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
capiō	capere	cēpī	captus

INDICATIVE

singular	Present	plural
capiō, capis, capit		capimus, capitis, capiunt
	Imperfect	
capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat		capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant
	Future	
capiam, -iēs, -iet		capiēmus, -iētis, -ient
	Perfect	
cēpī, -istī, -it		cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt *or* -ēre
	Pluperfect	
cēperam, -erās, -erat		cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant
	Future Perfect	
cēperō, -eris, -erit		cēperimus, -eritis, -erint

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	PRESENT	
capiam, -iās, -iat		capiāmus, -iātis, -iant
	IMPERFECT	
caperem, -erēs, -eret		caperēmus, -erētis, -erent
	PERFECT	
cēperim, -eris, -erit		cēperimus, -eritis, -erint
	PLUPERFECT	
cēpissem, -issēs, -isset		cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	cape	capite
Fut.	capitō	capitōte
	capitō	capiuntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	capere
Perf.	cēpisse
Fut.	captūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	capiēns
Fut.	captūrus

GERUND

Gen.	capiendī
Dat.	capiendō
Acc.	capiendum
Abl.	capiendō

SUPINE

Acc.	captum
Abl.	captū

184 **Passive Voice.**—capior, *I am taken*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
capior	capī	captus sum

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR	Present	PLURAL
capior, caperis, capitur		capimur, capiminī, capiuntur
	Imperfect	
capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur		capiēbāmur, -iēbāminī, -iēbantur
	Future	
capiar, -iēris, -iētur		capiēmur, -iēminī, -ientur
	Perfect	
captus sum, es, est		captī sumus, estis, sunt
	Pluperfect	
captus eram, erās, erat		captī erāmus, erātis, erant
	Future Perfect	
captus erō, eris, erit		captī erimus, eritis, erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR	Present	PLURAL
capiar, -iāris, -iātur		capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur
	Imperfect	
caperer, -erēris, -erētur		caperēmur, -erēminī, -erentur
	Perfect	
captus sim, sīs, sit		captī sīmus, sītis, sint
	Pluperfect	
captus essem, essēs, esset		captī essēmus, essētis, essent

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	capere	capiminī
Fut.	capitor	
	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	capī		
Perf.	captus esse	*Perfect.*	captus
Fut.	captum īrī	*Gerundive.*	capiendus

DEPONENT VERBS

185 Verbs having Passive forms with Active meanings are called Deponents.

1. They have also the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and Supine.

2. The Gerundive always, and the Perfect Participle sometimes, has the Passive meaning.

mīlitēs cohortandī, *the soldiers (were) to be harangued*
opere dīmēnsō, *the work (being) marked out*

186 The Principal Parts of a Deponent Verb are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, and Perfect Indicative.

CONJ.	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
I.	**hortor**	**hortārī**	**hortātus sum**, *exhort*
II.	**vereor**	**verērī**	**veritus sum**, *fear*
III.	**sequor**	**sequī**	**secūtus sum**, *follow*
IV.	**largior**	**largīrī**	**largītus sum**, *bestow*

INDICATIVE

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
Pres.	hortor	vereor	sequor	largior
	hortāris	verēris	sequeris	largīris
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	largītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	largīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	largīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	largiuntur
Impf.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	largiēbar
Fut.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	largiar
Perf.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	largītus sum
Plup.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	largītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	largītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	horter	verear	sequar	largiar
Impf.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	largīrer
Perf.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	largītus sim
Plup.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	largītus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	largīre
Fut.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	largītor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	largīrī
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	largītus esse
Fut.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	largītūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	largiēns
Fut.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	largītūrus
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	largītus
Ger.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	largiendus

GERUND

	hortandī	verendī	sequendī	largiendī

SUPINE

	hortātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	largītum, -tū

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

187 Semi-Deponent Verbs have Active forms in the Present System (**171**) and Passive Forms in the Perfect System, keeping their Active meaning throughout.

audeō	audēre	ausus sum,	*dare*
gaudeō	gaudēre	gāvīsus sum,	*rejoice*
soleō	solēre	solitus sum,	*be wont*
fīdō	fīdere	fīsus sum,	*trust*

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

188 The Periphrastic ("roundabout") kind of Conjugation is formed in the Active by adding the verb **sum** to the Future Active Participle, and in the Passive by adding **sum** to the Gerundive. Thus **amātūrus sum**, *I am about to love*; **amandus sum**, *I am to be loved.*

Active.—amātūrus sum, *I am about to love*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	amātūrus sum	*I am about to love*
Imp.	amātūrus eram	*I was about to love*
Fut.	amātūrus erō	*I shall be about to love*
Perf.	amātūrus fuī	*I have been about to love*
Plup.	amātūrus fueram	*I had been about to love*
F. P.	amātūrus fuerō	*I shall have been about to love*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	amātūrus sim	*I may be about to love*
Imp.	amātūrus essem	*I should be about to love*
Perf.	amātūrus fuerim	*I may have been about to love*
Plup.	amātūrus fuissem	*I should have been about to love*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amātūrus esse	*to be about to love*
Perf.	amātūrus fuisse	*to have been about to love*

Passive.—amandus sum, *I am to be loved*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	amandus sum	*I am to be loved, I deserve to be loved*
Imp.	amandus eram	*I was to be loved, deserved to be loved*
Fut.	amandus erō	*I shall deserve to be loved*
Perf.	amandus fuī	*I have deserved to be loved*
Plup.	amandus fueram	*I had deserved to be loved*
F. P.	amandus fuerō	*I shall have deserved to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	amandus sim	*I may deserve to be loved*
Imp.	amandus essem	*I should deserve to be loved*
Perf.	amandus fuerim	*I may have deserved to be loved*
Plup.	amandus fuissem	*I should have deserved to be loved*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amandus esse	*to deserve to be loved*
Perf.	amandus fuisse	*to have deserved to be loved*

PECULIAR FORMS IN CONJUGATION

189 Perfects in **-āvī**, **-ēvī**, **-īvī**, **-ōvī**, and kindred forms in the Perfect System, sometimes drop **vē**, **ve**, or **vi** before **r** or **s**.

Thus: **amāstī** = **amāvistī** **dēlēstī** = **dēlēvistī**
amārunt = **amāvērunt** **audīstī** = **audīvistī**
amārim = **amāverim** **audīsse** = **audīvisse**
amāssem = **amāvissem** **nōstī** = **nōvistī**

190 Notice the following Imperatives:

dīcō, *say*, has **dīc** **faciō**, *make*, has **fac**
dūcō, *lead*, has **dūc** **ferō**, *bear*, has **fer**

191 In Future and Perfect Infinitives **esse** is often omitted: **amātūrus** (esse), **amātus** (esse).

192 The endings **-undus** and **-undī**, instead of **-endus** and **-endī**, often occur in the Gerund and Gerundive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations ; as **faciundus** for **faciendus**.

CHANGES OF STEM IN REGULAR VERBS

193 The four Conjugations regularly form their Principal Parts as follows (see **166**, **170**, **171**) :

I.	amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus, *love*
II.	moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus, *advise* (in most verbs)
	dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētus, *destroy*
III.	carpō	carpere	carpsī	carptus, *pluck* } (in consonant
	regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus, *rule* } stems)
	acuō	acuere	acuī	acūtus, *sharpen* (in vowel stems)
IV.	audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus, *hear*

194 But other changes often occur in the body or in the ending of the Stem in forming the Principal Parts.

1. In forming the Perfect Stem notice the following changes before or with **s** :

(1) **b** becomes **p** : scrī**b**ō, *write* ; (scrīb-sī =) scrī**p**sī.
(2) **d** or **t** is lost : rī**d**eō, *laugh* ; (rīd-sī =) rīsī.
mit**t**ō, *send* ; (mitt-sī =) mīsī.
(3) **c** or **g** unites with **s** to form **x** : dū**c**ō, *lead* ; (dūc-sī =) dū**x**ī.
reg**g**ō, *rule* ; (reg-sī =) rē**x**ī.

195 2. In forming the Perfect Stem the Present Stem is sometimes

(1) Reduplicated : currō, *run* ; cu-currī.
mordeō, *bite* ; mo-mordī.
poscō, *demand* ; po-poscī.
(2) Lengthened : agō, *do*, *try* ; ēgī.
edō, *eat* ; ēdī.
videō, *see* ; vīdī.
veniō, *come* ; vēnī.
(3) Left Unchanged : solvō, *loose* ; solvī.
vertō, *turn* ; vertī.

196 3. In forming the Participial Stem notice the following changes before **t**:

(1) **b** becomes **p**: scrī**b**ō, *write*; (scrīb-tus =) scrī**p**tus.
(2) **d** or **t** combine to make **s** or **ss**:

vide**ō**, *see*; (vid-tus =) vī**s**us.
mit**t**ō, *send*; (mit**t**-tus =) mi**ss**us.

(3) **g** becomes **c**: re**g**ō, *rule*; (re**g**-tus =) rē**c**tus.
(4) Sometimes an **i** develops:

mone**ō**, *advise*; (mon-tus =) moni**t**us.

197 In forming compound verbs the Stem vowel of simple verbs often changes as follows:

1. The stem vowel **e**, changing to **ē** in Perfect Stem, becomes **i** in Present Stem of compounds:

emō	**e**mere	ēmī	ēmptus,	*buy*
red-**i**mō	red-**i**mere	red-ēmī	red-ēmptus,	*redeem*

2. The stem vowel **e**, remaining **e** throughout, becomes **i** in Present and Perfect Stems of compounds:

t**e**neō	t**e**nēre	t**e**nuī	——	*hold*
re-t**i**neō	re-t**i**nēre	re-t**i**nuī	re-tentus,	*retain*

3. The stem vowel **a**, changing to **ē** in Perfect Stem, becomes **i** in Present Stem and **e** in Participial Stem of compounds:

f**a**ciō	f**a**cere	fēcī	f**a**ctus,	*do*
dē-f**i**ciō	dē-f**i**cere	dē-fēcī	dē-f**e**ctus,	*fail*

4. The stem vowel **a**, remaining **a** throughout, becomes **i** in Present and Perfect Stems and **e** in Participial Stem of compounds:

r**a**piō	r**a**pere	r**a**puī	r**a**ptus,	*seize*
ē-r**i**piō	ē-r**i**pere	ē-r**i**puī	ē-r**e**ptus,	*pull out*

LIST OF VERBS

198 The regular verbs in each Conjugation are most conveniently arranged in classes according to the various forms in which the Perfect Indicative Active ends. In the following table the leading Perfect form in each Conjugation is given in bold type:

FIRST	SECOND	THIRD			FOURTH
		Consonant	Vowel	In **-scō**	
-vī	-vī	-vī	-vī	(-vī)	**-vī**
-uī	**-uī**	-uī	-uī	**-uī**	-uī
-ī	-ī	-ī	**-ī**	**-ī**	-ī
—	-sī	**-sī**	-sī	(-sī)	-sī

The following list includes only the commonly used verbs of the four regular Conjugations:

FIRST CONJUGATION

199 Perfect in **-vī**.

amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus	*love*

So all strictly regular verbs of the First Conjugation.

200 Perfect in **-uī**.

micō	micāre	micuī	——	*glitter*
dīmicō	dīmicāre	dīmicāvī	(dīmicātum)	*fight*
secō	secāre	secuī	sectus	*cut*
sonō	sonāre	sonuī	(sonātūrus)	*sound*
vetō	vetāre	vetuī	vetitus	*forbid*

201 Perfect in **-ī**.

1. With Reduplication:

dō	dare	dedī	datus	*give*

The **a** of the Stem is short, except in **dās**, **dā**, **dāns**. Compounds of **dō** with words of one syllable belong to the

Third Conjugation. See **211**. In other compounds **dō** does not change.

stō	stāre	stetī	——	*stand*

Compounds of **stō** with words of one syllable have the Perfect in **-stitī** (not **-stetī**); as **prae-stō, prae-stitī**.

2. With Stem Vowel Lengthened:

juvō	juvāre	jūvī	jūtus	*help*
lavō	lavāre	lāvī	lautus	*wash*

202 Deponents.

All are strictly regular like hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *exhort.*

SECOND CONJUGATION

203 Perfect in **-vī.**

cieō	ciēre	cīvī	citus	*stir up*
dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētus	*destroy*
fleō	flēre	flēvī	flētus	*weep*
compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētus	*fill up*
impleō	implēre	implēvī	implētus	*fulfil*

204 Perfect in **-uī.** So most verbs of the Second Conjugation.

1. Principal Parts in **-eō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**:

arceō	arcēre	arcuī	——	*check*
coerceō	coercēre	coercuī	coercitus	*hold in check*
exerceō	exercēre	exercuī	exercitus	*practise*
careō	carēre	caruī	(caritūrus)	*lack*
doleō	dolēre	doluī	(dolitūrus)	*grieve*
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitus	*have*
dēbeō	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbitus	*owe, ought*
praebeō	praebēre	praebuī	praebitus	*offer*
jaceō	jacēre	jacuī	(jacitūrus)	*lie*
mereō	merēre	meruī	meritus	*deserve*
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus	*advise*
pāreō	pārēre	pāruī	(pāritūrus)	*obey*
placeō	placēre	placuī	(placitūrus)	*please*
taceō	tacēre	tacuī	(tacitūrus)	*be silent*
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territus	*frighten*

Also the following, which have no Participial Stem :

egeō	egēre	eguī	——	*need*
ēmineō	ēminēre	ēminuī	——	*stand forth*
horreō	horrēre	horruī	——	*bristle*
lateō	latēre	latuī	——	*lie hid*
niteō	nitēre	nituī	——	*gleam*
pateō	patēre	patuī	——	*lie open*
sileō	silēre	siluī	——	*be silent*
splendeō	splendēre	splenduī	——	*gleam*
studeō	studēre	studuī	——	*desire*
stupeō	stupēre	stupuī	——	*be amazed*
timeō	timēre	timuī	——	*fear*
torpeō	torpēre	torpuī	——	*be dull*

And the following, which have only the Present Stem :

frīgeō	frīgēre	——	——	*be cold*
immineō	imminēre	——	——	*overhang*
maereō	maerēre	——	——	*mourn*

2. Principal Parts in **-eō, -ēre, -uī, -tus (-sus)** :

cēnseō	cēnsēre	cēnsuī	cēnsus	*rate, think*
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctus	*teach*
misceō	miscēre	miscuī	mixtus	*mix*
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	——	*hold*
obtineō	obtinēre	obtinuī	obtentus	*maintain*
retineō	retinēre	retinuī	retentus	*retain*

205 Perfect in **-sī.**

abstergeō	abstergēre	abstersī	abstersus	*wipe off*
ārdeō	ārdēre	ārsī	(ārsūrus)	*burn*
augeō	augēre	auxī	auctus	*increase*
fulgeō	fulgēre	fulsī	——	*gleam*
haereō	haerēre	haesī	(haesūrus)	*stick*
indulgeō	indulgēre	indulsī	——	*indulge*
jubeō	jubēre	jussī	jussus	*order*
lūceō	lūcēre	lūxī	——	*be light*
maneō	manēre	mānsī	(mānsūrus)	*stay*
rīdeō	rīdēre	rīsī	(rīsum)	*laugh*
suādeō	suādēre	suāsī	(suāsum)	*advise*
torqueō	torquēre	torsī	tortus	*twist*

206 Perfect in **-ī.**

1. With Reduplication:

mordeō	mordēre	momordī	morsus	*bite*
pendeō	pendēre	pependī	——	*hang*
spondeō	spondēre	spopondī	spōnsus	*pledge*

2. With Stem Vowel Lengthened:

caveō	cavēre	cāvī	(cautūrus)	*beware*
faveō	favēre	fāvī	(fautūrus)	*favor*
foveō	fovēre	fōvī	fōtus	*cherish*
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtus	*move*
sedeō	sedēre	sēdī	(sessūrus)	*sit*
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus	*see*

3. With Stem Unchanged:

ferveō	fervēre	fervī (ferbuī)	——	*boil*
strīdeō	strīdēre	strīdī	——	*creak*

207 Deponents and Semi-Deponents.

fateor	fatērī	fassus sum	*confess*
cōnfiteor	cōnfitērī	cōnfessus sum	*confess*
liceor	licērī	licitus sum	*bid, offer*
polliceor	pollicērī	pollicitus sum	*promise*
misereor	miserērī	miseritus sum	*pity*
reor	rērī	ratus sum	*think*
tueor	tuērī	——	*look to, protect*
vereor	verērī	veritus sum	*fear*
audeō	audēre	ausus sum	*dare*
gaudeō	gaudēre	gāvīsus sum	*rejoice*
soleō	solēre	solitus sum	*be accustomed*

THIRD CONJUGATION

Consonant Stems.

208 Perfect in **-sī.**

1. Principal Parts in **-ō, -ere, -sī, -tus:**

carpō	carpere	carpsī	carptus	*pluck*
cingō	cingere	cīnxī	cīnctus	*gird*
coquō	coquere	cōxī	coctus	*cook*

dīcō	dīcere	dīxī	dictus	*say*
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductus	*lead*
fingō	fingere	fīnxī	fictus	*fashion*
gerō	gerere	gessī	gestus	*carry*
jungō	jungere	jūnxī	jūnctus	*join*
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus	*rule*
scrībō	scrībere	scrīpsī	scrīptus	*write*
stringō	stringere	strīnxī	strictus	*bind*
tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctus	*cover*
trahō	trahere	trāxī	trāctus	*draw*
ūrō	ūrere	ussī	ūstus	*burn*
vehō	vehere	vēxī	vectus	*carry*
vīvō	vīvere	vīxī	(vīctum)	*live*

2. Principal Parts in **-ō, -ere, -sī, -sus** :

cēdō	cēdere	cessī	(cessum)	*yield*
claudō	claudere	clausī	clausus	*shut*
dīvidō	dīvidere	dīvīsī	dīvīsus	*divide*
fīgō	fīgere	fīxī	fīxus	*fasten*
flectō	flectere	flexī	flexus	*bend*
laedō	laedere	laesī	laesus	*hurt*
lūdō	lūdere	lūsī	(lūsum)	*play*
mergō	mergere	mersī	mersus	*sink*
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus	*send*
premō	premere	pressī	pressus	*press*
rādō	rādere	rāsī	rāsus	*shave*
spargō	spargere	sparsī	sparsus	*scatter*

209 Perfect in **-vī** :

arcessō	arcessere	arcessīvī	arcessītus	*summon*
cernō	cernere	——	——	*see*
dēcernō	dēcernere	dēcrēvī	dēcrētus	*decide*
petō	petere	petīvī (petiī)	petītus	*seek, beg*
pōnō	pōnere	posuī	positus	*place*
quaerō	quaerere	quaesīvī	quaesītus	*seek, ask*
acquīrō	acquīrere	acquīsīvī	acquīsītus	*acquire*
serō	serere	sēvī	satus	*sow*
sinō	sinere	sīvī	situs	*let*
dēsinō	dēsinere	dēsiī	dēsitus	*cease*
spernō	spernere	sprēvī	sprētus	*scorn*
sternō	sternere	strāvī	strātus	*strew*
prōsternō	prōsternere	prōstrāvī	prōstrātus	*overthrow*
terō	terere	trīvī	trītus	*rub*

210 Perfect in **-uī** :

alō	alere	aluī	altus (alitus)	*nourish*
colō	colere	coluī	cultus	*cultivate*
incolō	incolere	incoluī	——	*inhabit*
cōnserō	cōnserere	cōnseruī	cōnsertus	*join*
cōnsulō	cōnsulere	cōnsuluī	cōnsultus	*consult*
dēserō	dēserere	dēseruī	dēsertus	*desert*
fremō	fremere	fremuī	——	*roar*
gemō	gemere	gemuī	——	*groan*
gīgnō	gīgnere	genuī	genitus	*bring forth*
incumbō	incumbere	incubuī	incubitus	*lean on*
texō	texere	texuī	textus	*weave*
tremō	tremere	tremuī	——	*tremble*

211 Perfect in **-ī**.

1. With Reduplication :

abdō	abdere	abdidī	abditus	*put away, hide*
crēdō	crēdere	crēdidī	crēditus	*put faith in, believe*
reddō	reddere	reddidī	redditus	*give back, restore*

and all other compounds of dō, *give*, with monosyllabic words.

cadō	cadere	cecidī	(cāsūrus)	*fall*
occidō	occidere	occidī	occāsus	*go down, perish*
caedō	caedere	cecīdī	caesus	*cut*
occīdō	occīdere	occīdī	occīsus	*cut down, kill*
canō	canere	cecinī	——	*sing*
circumsistō	circumsistere	circumstetī	——	*surround*
cōnsistō	cōnsistere	cōnstitī	——	*take a stand*
currō	currere	cucurrī	(cursum)	*run*
fallō	fallere	fefellī	(falsus)	*deceive*
parcō	parcere	pepercī	(parsūrus)	*spare*
pellō	pellere	pepulī	pulsus	*drive*
resistō	resistere	restitī	——	*resist*
tangō	tangere	tetigī	tāctus	*touch*
tendō	tendere	tetendī	tentus	*stretch*

Also the following, which have lost their original reduplication :

findō	findere	fidī	fissus	*split*
percellō	percellere	perculī	perculsus	*strike down*
scindō	scindere	scidī	scissus	*tear apart*
tollō	tollere	(sustulī)	(sublātus)	*bear off, lift*

2. With Stem Vowel Lengthened :

agō	agere	ēgī	āctus	*drive, do*
cōgō	cōgere	coēgī	coāctus	*compel*
peragō	peragere	perēgī	perāctus	*finish*
subigō	subigere	subēgī	subāctus	*subdue*
edō	edere, ēsse	ēdī	ēsus	*eat*
emō	emere	ēmī	ēmptus	*take, buy*
coëmō	coëmere	coēmī	coēmptus	*buy up*
dēmō	dēmere	dēmpsī	dēmptus	*take away*
dirimō	dirimere	dirēmī	dirēmptus	*destroy*
redimō	redimere	redēmī	redēmptus	*buy back*
sūmō	sūmere	sūmpsī	sūmptus	*take up*
frangō	frangere	frēgī	frāctus	*break*
fundō	fundere	fūdī	fūsus	*pour*
legō	legere	lēgī	lēctus	*gather, read*
colligō	colligere	collēgī	collēctus	*collect*
dēligō	dēligere	dēlēgī	dēlēctus	*choose*
dīligō	dīligere	dīlēxī	dīlēctus	*love*
intellegō	intellegere	intellēxī	intellēctus	*understand*
neglegō	neglegere	neglēxī	neglēctus	*neglect*
relinquō	relinquere	relīquī	relīctus	*leave*
rumpō	rumpere	rūpī	ruptus	*break, burst*
vincō	vincere	vīcī	victus	*conquer*

3. With Stem Unchanged :

accendō	accendere	accendī	accēnsus	*kindle*
dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsus	*defend*
pandō	pandere	pandī	passus	*spread*
prehendō	prehendere	prehendī	prehēnsus	*seize*
scandō	scandere	——	——	*climb*
ascendō	ascendere	ascendī	(ascēnsum)	*climb up*
solvō	solvere	solvī	solūtus	*loose*
vellō	vellere	vellī	vulsus	*pluck*
verrō	verrere	verrī	versus	*sweep*
vertō	vertere	vertī	versus	*turn*
volvō	volvere	volvī	volūtus	*roll*

212 Present System only :

angō	angere	——	——	*choke*
claudō	claudere	——	——	*limp*
lambō	lambere	——	——	*lick*
vergō	vergere	——	——	*incline, lie*

213 Vowel Stems.

1. Present Stems in **-u** :

acuō	acuere	acuī	——	*sharpen*
arguō	arguere	arguī	——	*accuse*
fluō	fluere	fluxī	——	*flow*
imbuō	imbuere	imbuī	imbūtus	*imbue*
induō	induere	induī	indūtus	*put on*
luō	luere	luī	——	*pay, atone for*
polluō	polluere	polluī	pollūtus	*defile*
metuō	metuere	metuī	——	*fear*
minuō	minuere	minuī	minūtus	*lessen*
ruō	ruere	ruī	ruitūrus	*fall*
dīruō	dīruere	dīruī	dīrutus	*destroy*
obruō	obruere	obruī	obrutus	*overwhelm*
statuō	statuere	statuī	statūtus	*set, settle*
cōnstituō	cōnstituere	cōnstituī	cōnstitūtus	*determine*
struō	struere	strūxī	strūctus	*build*
tribuō	tribuere	tribuī	tribūtus	*allot*

2. Present Stems in **-i** (see **182**) :

aspiciō	aspicere	aspexī	aspectus	*look at*
capiō	capere	cēpī	captus	*take*
accipiō	accipere	accēpī	acceptus	*accept*
incipiō	incipere	incēpī	inceptus	*begin*
cōnspiciō	cōnspicere	cōnspexī	cōnspectus	*behold*
cupiō	cupere	cupīvī	cupītus	*desire*
faciō	facere	fēcī	factus	*make*
interficiō	interficere	interfēcī	interfectus	*kill*

and other prepositional compounds of faciō. But -faciō is inflected without change of its simple stems in the compounds assuēfaciō, *accustom*, calefaciō, *heat*, patefaciō, *open*.

fodiō	fodere	fōdī	fossus	*dig*
fugiō	fugere	fūgī	fugitūrus	*flee*
effugiō	effugere	effūgī	——	*escape*
jaciō	jacere	jēcī	jactus	*hurl*
abiciō	abicere	abjēcī	abjectus	*throw away*
pariō	parere	peperī	partus	*bring forth*
quatiō	quatere	——	quassus	*shake*
concutiō	concutere	concussī	concussus	*shock*
rapiō	rapere	rapuī	raptus	*seize*
dīripiō	dīripere	dīripuī	dīreptus	*plunder*

214 Verbs in **-scō**. These are called Inceptive or Inchoative Verbs, because all but the simple verbs in -scō regularly denote the beginning of an action : flōrēscō, *begin to bloom*.

1. Simple Verbs in **-scō** :

cōnsuēscō	cōnsuēscere	cōnsuēvī	cōnsuētus	*accustom one's self*
crēscō	crēscere	crēvī	crētus	*grow*
discō	discere	didicī	——	*learn*
nōscō	nōscere	nōvī	[nōtus, *adj.*]	*know*
āgnōscō	āgnōscere	āgnōvī	āgnitus	*recognize*
cōgnōscō	cōgnōscere	cōgnōvī	cōgnitus	*recognize*
īgnōscō	īgnōscere	īgnōvī	(īgnōtum)	*pardon*
pāscō	pāscere	pāvī	pāstus	*feed*
poscō	poscere	poposcī	——	*demand*
quiēscō	quiēscere	quiēvī	(quiētum)	*be still*

2. Derivatives in **-scō** formed from Verbs and Adjectives ; such as :

flōrēscō	flōrēscere	flōruī	*blossom* (flōreō, *bloom*)
mātūrēscō	mātūrēscere	mātūruī	*ripen* (mātūrus, *ripe*)

and many others.

215 Deponents :

adipīscor	adipīscī	adeptus sum	*attain*
amplector	amplectī	amplexus sum	*embrace*
comminīscor	comminīscī	commentus sum	*invent, make up*
fruor	fruī	(fruitūrus)	*enjoy*
fungor	fungī	fūnctus sum	*perform*
gradior	gradī	gressus sum	*step, march*
īrāscor	īrāscī	(īrātus)	*get angry*
lābor	lābī	lāpsus sum	*glide, slip*
loquor	loquī	locūtus sum	*talk*
morior	morī	mortuus sum	*die*
nancīscor	nancīscī	nanctus (nactus) sum	*acquire*
nāscor	nāscī	nātus sum	*be born*
nītor	nītī	nīsus (nīxus) sum	*rest on, strive*
oblīvīscor	oblīvīscī	oblītus sum	*forget*
pacīscor	pacīscī	pactus sum	*bargain*
patior	patī	passus sum	*suffer*
perpetior	perpetī	perpessus sum	*endure*
proficīscor	proficīscī	profectus sum	*set out*

queror	querī	questus sum	*complain*
reminīscor	reminīscī	——	*recollect*
sequor	sequī	secūtus sum	*follow*
ulcīscor	ulcīscī	ultus sum	*avenge*
ūtor	ūtī	ūsus sum	*use*
vescor	vescī	——	*feed*

FOURTH CONJUGATION

216 Perfect in **-vī** :

audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus	*hear*

So all strictly regular verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

217 Perfect in **-uī** :

aperiō	aperīre	aperuī	apertus	*open*
operiō	operīre	operuī	opertus	*cover*
saliō	salīre	saluī	——	*leap*

218 Perfect in **-sī** :

fulciō	fulcīre	fulsī	fultus	*support*
hauriō	haurīre	hausī	haustus	*draw*
sanciō	sancīre	sānxī	sānctus	*ratify*
sentiō	sentīre	sēnsī	sēnsus	*feel*
vinciō	vincīre	vinxī	vinctus	*bind*

219 Perfect in **-ī**.

1. With old Reduplication Lost :

comperiō	comperīre	comperī	compertus	*ascertain*
reperiō	reperīre	repperī	repertus	*find*

2. With Stem Vowel Lengthened :

veniō	venīre	vēnī	(ventum)	*come*
adveniō	advenīre	advēnī	(adventum)	*arrive*
inveniō	invenīre	invēnī	inventus	*find*

220 Deponents are usually strictly regular, like

largior	largīrī	largītus sum	*bestow*

But the following should be noticed :

assentior	assentīrī	assēnsus sum	*assent*
experior	experīrī	expertus sum	*try*
mētior	mētīrī	mēnsus sum	*measure*
opperior	opperīrī	oppertus sum	*await*
ōrdior	ōrdīrī	ōrsus sum	*begin*
orior	orīrī	ortus sum	*arise*

IRREGULAR VERBS

221 The Irregular Verbs are **sum**, **edō**, **ferō**, **volō**, **fīō**, **eō**, **queō** and their compounds.

For the conjugation of **sum** see **173**. Its compounds are conjugated in the same way, excepting **prōsum**, *profit*, and **possum**, *be able*. **prōsum** is a compound of **prōd-** (old form of **prō-**) and **sum**. It keeps the **d** before **e**, but loses it elsewhere. Thus **prō-sum**, **prōd-es**, **prōd-est**; **prō-sumus**, **prōd-estis**, **prō-sunt**. **possum** is a compound of **pot-is**, *able*, and **sum**.

222 **possum**, *be able*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

possum	**posse**	**potuī**	*be able*

INDICATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	possum, potes, potest	possumus, potestis, possunt
Imp.	poteram	poterāmus
Fut.	poterō	poterimus
Perf.	potuī	potuimus
Plup.	potueram	potuerāmus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	possim, possīs, possit	possīmus, possītis, possint
Imp.	possem	possēmus
Perf.	potuerim	potuerimus
Plup.	potuissem	potuissēmus

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	posse	*Pres.*	potēns
Perf.	potuisse		

223 edō, *eat.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

edō **edere** **ēdī** **ēsus** *eat*

Active Voice

INDICATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	edō	edimus
	edis, ēs	editis, ēstis
	edit, ēst	edunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Imp.	ederem, ēssem	ederēmus, ēssēmus
	ederēs, ēssēs	ederētis, ēssētis
	ederet, ēsset	ederent, ēssent

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	ede, ēs	edite, ēste
Fut.	editō, ēstō	editōte, ēstōte
	editō, ēstō	eduntō

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	edere, ēsse	*Pres.*	edēns
Fut.	ēsūrus esse		
Perf.	ēdisse	*Fut.*	ēsūrus

GERUND	SUPINE
edendī	ēsum, -ū

In the Passive Voice the following forms in the Third Person Singular occur: Present Indicative, **editur** or **ēstur**, and Imperfect Subjunctive, **ederētur** or **ēssētur**.

224 **ferō**, *bear, carry.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

ferō **ferre** **tulī** **lātus** *bear*

Active Voice

INDICATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	ferō, fers, fert	ferimus, fertis, ferunt
Imp.	ferēbam	ferēbāmus
Fut.	feram	ferēmus
Perf.	tulī	tulimus
Plup.	tuleram	tulerāmus
F. P.	tulerō	tulerimus

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	feram	ferāmus
Imp.	ferrem	ferrēmus
Perf.	tulerim	tulerimus
Plup.	tulissem	tulissēmus

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	fer	ferte
Fut.	fertō	fertōte
	fertō	feruntō

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	ferre	*Pres.*	ferēns
Perf.	tulisse		
Fut.	lātūrus esse	*Fut.*	lātūrus

GERUND		SUPINE	
Gen.	ferendī		
Dat.	ferendō		
Acc.	ferendum	*Acc.*	lātum
Abl.	ferendō	*Abl.*	lātū

225 **Passive Voice**

feror **ferrī** **lātus sum** *be borne*

INDICATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	feror, ferris, fertur	ferimur, feriminī, feruntur
Imp.	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
Fut.	ferar	ferēmur
Perf.	lātus sum	lātī sumus
Plup.	lātus eram	lātī erāmus
F. P.	lātus erō	lātī erimus

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	ferar	ferāmur
Imp.	ferrer	ferrēmur
Perf.	lātus sim	lātī sīmus
Plup.	lātus essem	lātī essēmus

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	ferre	feriminī
Fut.	fertor	——
	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	ferrī		
Perf.	lātus esse	*Perfect.*	lātus
Fut.	lātum īrī	*Gerundive.*	ferendus

226 In compounds notice that **ferō** preserves its simple form without change, and that the preposition with which it is compounded undergoes various changes :

afferō	afferre	attulī	allātus	*carry to*
auferō	auferre	abstulī	ablātus	*carry away*
cōnferō	cōnferre	contulī	collātus	*compare*
differō	differre	distulī	dīlātus	*put off*
efferō	efferre	extulī	ēlātus	*carry off*
īnferō	īnferre	intulī	illātus	*bring against*
offerō	offerre	obtulī	oblātus	*present*
referō	referre	rettulī	relātus	*bring back*
[tollō]	[tollere]	sustulī	sublātus	*lift, take away*

227 volō, nōlō, mālō.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

volō	**velle**	**voluī**	*be willing*
nōlō	**nōlle**	**nōluī**	*be unwilling*
mālō	**mālle**	**māluī**	*prefer*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imp.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	māllueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim, -īs, -it, etc.	nōlim	mālim
Imp.	vellem, -ēs, -et, etc.	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	——	nōlī	nōlīte	——
Fut.	——	nōlītō	nōlītōte	——
	——	nōlītō	nōluntō	——

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns	[nōlēns]	——

nōlō is compounded of **nōn**, *not*, and **volō**; **mālō** of **magis**, *more*, and **volō**.

228 **fīō**, *become, be made.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

fīō	**fierī**	**factus sum**	*become, be made*

INDICATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit	fīmus, fītis, fīunt
Imp.	fīēbam	fīēbāmus
Fut.	fīam	fīēmus
Perf.	factus sum	factī sumus
Plup.	factus eram	factī erāmus
F. P.	factus erō	factī erimus

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	fīam	fīāmus
Imp.	fierem	fierēmus
Perf.	factus sim	factī sīmus
Plup.	factus essem	factī essēmus

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	fī	fīte

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	fierī		
Perf.	factus esse	*Perfect.*	factus
Fut.	factum īrī	*Gerundive.*	faciendus

229 **eō**, *go*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

eō **īre** **īvī** **itum** *go*

INDICATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	eō, īs, it	īmus, ītis, eunt
Imp.	ībam	ībāmus
Fut.	ībō	ībimus
Perf.	īvī (iī)	īvimus (iimus)
Plup.	īveram (ieram)	īverāmus (ierāmus)
F. P.	īverō (ierō)	īverimus (ierimus)

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	eam	eāmus
Imp.	īrem	īrēmus
Perf.	īverim (ierim)	īverimus (ierimus)
Plup.	īvissem (iissem, īssem)	īvissēmus (iissēmus, īssēmus)

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	ī	īte
Fut.	ītō	ītōte
	ītō	euntō

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	īre	*Pres.*	iēns
Perf.	īvisse (īsse)		(*Gen.* euntis)
Fut.	itūrus esse	*Fut.*	itūrus

GERUND		SUPINE	
Gen.	eundī		
Dat.	eundō		
Acc.	eundum	*Acc.*	itum
Abl.	eundō	*Abl.*	itū

queō, *I can*, and **nequeō**, *I cannot*, are conjugated like **eō**.

DEFECTIVE VERBS

230 The following three lack the Present System:

coepī, *I have begun* **meminī**, *I remember* **ōdī**, *I hate*

INDICATIVE

Perf.	coepī	meminī	ōdī
Plup.	coeperam	memineram	ōderam
F. P.	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf.	coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
Plup.	coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem

IMPERATIVE

——	mementō, mementōte	——

INFINITIVE

Perf.	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
Fut.	coeptūrus esse	——	ōsūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Perf.	coeptus	——	ōsus
Fut.	coeptūrus	——	ōsūrus

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of **meminī** and **ōdī** have the meanings of the Present, Imperfect, and Future respectively: **ōdī**, *I hate*, **ōderam**, *I was hating*, **ōderō**, *I shall hate*. Passive forms of **coepī** are used in governing Passive Infinitives. Thus: **lapidēs jacī coeptī sunt**, *stones began* (literally *were begun*) *to be thrown*.

231 **inquam**, *say I* (inserted in direct quotations).

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Ind. Pres.	inquam	inquis	inquit	——	——	inquiunt
Ind. Fut.	——	inquiēs	inquiet	——	——	——

232 **ājō**, *I say, assert.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Ind. Pres.	ājō	ais	ait	——	——	ājunt
Ind. Impf.	ājēbam	ājēbās	ājēbat	ājēbāmus	ājēbātis	ājēbant
Subj. Pres.	——	ājās	ājat	——	——	——

IMPERSONAL VERBS

233 Impersonal Verbs are those which do not take a personal subject, and are therefore translated with *it*. The subject is usually an Infinitive (623) or a clause (498). They are used only in the Third Person Singular and in the Infinitive. Impersonal Verbs include:

1. Verbs referring to the weather:

pluit, *it rains*
ningit, *it snows*
fulget, *it lightens*
tonat, *it thunders*

2. Verbs of feeling and conduct:

FEELING	CONDUCT
miseret, *it causes pity*	**decet**, *it is becoming*
paenitet, *it repents*	**dēdecet**, *it is unbecoming*
piget, *it grieves*	**libet**, *it suits*
pudet, *it shames*	**licet**, *it is lawful*
taedet, *it disgusts*	**oportet**, *it ought*
	rēfert, *it concerns*

With Impersonal Verbs of Feeling the person concerned is in the Accusative. Thus **pudet mē**, *it shames me = I am ashamed.*

With Impersonal Verbs of Conduct the person concerned is in the Dative. Thus **libet mihi**, *it suits me*, **oportet tibi**, *you ought = you must*, **licet tibi**, *it is lawful for you = you may*.

3. Other verbs sometimes used impersonally, and a few Passive forms, such as:

accidit, fit,	*it happens*	**accēdit,**	*it is added*
placet,	*it pleases*	**praestat,**	*it is better*
curritur	*it is run*	= *some one runs*	
pūgnātur	*it is fought*	= *there is fighting*	
āctum est	*it is done*	= *all is over*	
ventum est	*it is come*	= *some one has come*	

THE PARTICLES

234 Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions, and Interjections are called Particles (**7**, **8**, **9**). Adverbs change their form by Comparison only (**44**). Apart from this the Particles are not inflected.

ADVERBS

FORMATION

235 Most Adverbs are derived from Adjectives.

1. Adverbs are formed from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions by changing the final vowel of the stem to **-ē**.

	ADJECTIVES		ADVERBS
Thus **līber** (stem **lībero-**),	*free*,	becomes	**līberē**, *freely*
vērus (stem **vēro-**),	*true*,	"	**vērē**, *truly*

2. Adverbs are formed from Adjectives of the Third Declension by adding **-ter** to the stem.

ADJECTIVES			ADVERBS	
ācer (stem **ācri-**),	*sharp*,	becomes	**ācriter**,	*sharply*
fortis (stem **forti-**),	*brave*,	"	**fortiter**,	*bravely*
fēlīx (stem **fēlīci-**),	*happy*,	"	**fēlīciter**,	*happily*
amāns (stem **amant-**),	*loving*,	"	**amanter**,	*lovingly*

Notice that stems in **-nt** lose the **t** before **-ter**.

236 1. Some Adverbs in **-ē** have also a form in **-iter**:

hūmānē and **hūmāniter**, *kindly*
largē and **largiter**, *lavishly*

2. Some Adverbs in **-ē** have also a form in **-ō**, sometimes with change of meaning:

certē, *at least, at any rate*	**certō**, *certainly, for sure*
rārē, *thinly*	**rārō**, *seldom*
vērē, *truly*	**vērō**, *true but*

237 1. Many Adverbs are really Accusative or Ablative forms of Adjectives, Nouns, or Pronouns:

ACCUSATIVE FORMS	ABLATIVE FORMS
trīste, *sadly*	**modo**, *only*
multum, *much*	**prīmō**, *at first*
clam, *secretly*	**māgnopere**, *greatly*
quam, *as*	**forte**, *by chance*
quid? *why?*	**quā**, *where*

2. Some Adverbs have the ending **-tim** (**-sim**) or **-im**:

statim, *at once*	**passim**, *everywhere*
paulātim, *gradually*	**interim**, *meanwhile*

3. Some Adverbs end in **-tus**:

antīquitus, *of old* **rādīcitus**, *from the roots*

COMPARISON

238 Adverbs follow the comparison of the Adjectives from which they are derived. The endings of Adverbial comparison are:

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1.	**-ē** or **-ter**	**-ius**	**-issimē**
	altē, *loftily*	**altius**	**altissimē**
	fēlīciter, *happily*	**fēlīcius**	**fēlīcissimē**

following the comparison of **altus** and **fēlix** (see **120**).

2.	-ē or -ter	-ius	-rimē
	līberē, *freely*	līberius	līberrimē
	ācriter, *sharply*	ācrius	ācerrimē

following the comparison of līber and ācer (see 122).

3.	-e or -ter	-ius	-limē
	facile, *easily*	facilius	facillimē
	similiter, *in like manner*	similius	simillimē

following the comparison of facilis (see 123).

239 The following Adverbs are irregular in comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene, *well*	melius	optimē
male, *ill*	pējus	pessimē
multum, *much*	plūs	plūrimum
parum, (*too*) *little*	minus	minimē
diū, *long*	diūtius	diūtissimē
nēquiter, *worthlessly*	nēquius	nēquissimē
prope, *near*	propius	proximē
	magis, *more*	māximē, *most*
	potius, *rather*	potissimum, *most of all*
	prius, *formerly*	prīmum, *first*

CLASSES

240 Adverbs are divided into the following classes:

1. Adverbs of Manner. This is by far the largest class, including nearly all Adverbs derived from Adjectives; as vērē, *truly*, bene, *well*, facile, *easily*.

2. Adverbs of Place:

ubi, *where*	ibi, *there*	alicubi, ūsquam,	*somewhere*
hīc, *here*	hūc, *hither*	hinc, *hence*	hāc, *this way*
illīc, *there*	illūc, *thither*	illinc, *thence*	illāc, *that way*

3. Adverbs of Time:

cum, *when* tum, *then* nunc, *just now* tunc, *just then*
quandō? *when?* jam, *now* umquam, *ever* numquam, *never*

4. Adverbs of Degree:

quam, *as much as* tam, *so much* quamvīs, *however much*
quotiēns, *as often as* totiēns, *so often*

5. Adverbs of Question (Interrogative Particles):

-ne, nōnne, num, are question marks (280). an, anne, utrum, utrumne, *or, whether.* annōn, necne, *or not*

6. Adverbs of Assent and Denial:

etiam, *yes, so* ita, *yes, so* quidem, *indeed, to be sure*
nōn, *no, not* haud, *hardly, not* minimē, *not at all*

7. Adverbs of Number (see 132).

PREPOSITIONS

241 Prepositions stand before the cases they govern.

But versus, *-ward*, and tenus, *as far as*, are postpositive.

242 These twenty-nine take the Accusative only:

ad, *to*	ergā, *towards*	pōne, *behind*
adversus, *against*	extrā, *without*	post, *after*
adversum, *towards*	īnfrā, *below*	praeter, *except*
ante, *before*	inter, *among*	prope, *near*
apud, *at, near*	intrā, *within*	propter, *on account of*
circā, *around*	jūxtā, *near*	secundum, *according*
circiter, *about*	ob, *on account of*	suprā, *above* [*to*
circum, *around*	penes, *in the*	trāns, *across*
cis, citrā, *this side*	*power of*	ultrā, *beyond*
contrā, *opposite to*	per, *through*	versus, *-ward*

Like **prope** in governing the Accusative are **propior, propius, proximus, proximē.** Thus: **Ubiī proximī Rhēnum incolunt,** *the Ubii dwell next (to) the Rhine.*

243 These ten take the Ablative only:

ā, ab, abs, *away from, by*	ē, ex, *out from, out of*
absque, *without (apart from)*	prae, *compared with*
cōram, *in presence of*	prō, *for, in behalf of, in front of*
cum, *with*	sine, *without, -less*
dē, *down from, concerning*	tenus, *up to, as far as*

244 Before consonants ā or ab, ē or ex may be used. Before a vowel or h always use ab and ex: ab initiō, *from the beginning*, ex urbe, *out from the city*, ex hordeō, *out of barley*. abs is used only in abs tē, but ā tē is more common.

cum is always appended to Personal, usually to Relative Pronouns:

mēcum, *with me*	vōbīscum, *with you*
sēcum, *with him, with them*	quibúscum, *with whom*

245 These four take the Accusative or Ablative:

in, *in, into, against*	subter, *underneath*
sub, *under*	super, *above*

in and sub with the Accusative denote *motion to* a place; with the Ablative they denote *rest in* a place. Thus:

in urbem vēnit	*he came into the city*
in urbe habitat	*he dwells in the city*
sub montem pervēnit	*he arrived at the foot of the mountain*
sub monte	*underneath the mountain*

So, by extension of this meaning, sub noctem, *at nightfall (= just-up-to night)*.

246 The Inseparable Prepositions (or Adverbs) are so named because they occur only in compound words. Such are:

amb(i)-, *around*	amb-īre, *go around*
dis-, dī-, *asunder*	dis-tinēre, *hold apart*
in-, *not, un-*	in-imīcus, *un-friendly*
red-, re-, *back*	red-īre, *go back, re-turn*
sēd-, sē-, *apart*	sē-cēdere, *go apart, se-cede*
vē-, *not, -less*	vē-cors, *heart-less*

CONJUNCTIONS

247 Conjunctions (joining-words) connect words, phrases, or clauses. They are of two kinds.

I. Coördinate Conjunctions join words, phrases or clauses having the same construction:

sōl et lūna, *sun and moon.*
senātus populusque, *the senate and people.*
aut vīvam aut moriar, *I shall either live or die.*

II. Subordinate Conjunctions join a subordinate to a principal clause (see 287):

sī valēs, bene est, *if you are in health, it is well.*
vēnī ut vidērem, (*I came that I might see*), *I came to see.*

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

248 Coördinate Conjunctions are divided into five classes:

1. Copulative (uniting):

et, -que, atque (ac), *and*; **etiam, quoque**, *also*

et connects expressions of like importance.

-que connects expressions closely combined in meaning. It is regularly appended to the second word (**terrā marīque**, *by land and sea*) or to the first word of the second clause (**Aquilōnem claudit ēmittitque Notum**, *he holds the North (wind) and sends forth the South*).

atque (ac) connects two expressions, the second of which is more prominent. **ac** is used only before consonants. In statements of comparison **atque (ac)** means *as* or *than*: **idem ac**, *the same as*, **aliter atque sentiō**, *otherwise than I feel.*

etiam is like **et**.

quoque follows its word: **tū quoque**, *and you too!*

The following pairs are often used :

et . . . et	*both . . . and*
neque . . . neque nec . . . nec	*neither . . . nor*
cum . . . tum	*while . . . at the same time*

249 2. Disjunctive (separating) :

aut, vel, -ve, sīve, *or*

The following pairs are often used :

aut . . . aut	*either . . . or* (exclusive)
vel . . . vel	*either . . . or* (indifferent)
sīve . . . sīve	*if . . . or if*
aut Caesar aut nūllus	*either Caesar or nobody*
vel pācī vel bellō parātus	*ready for* (*either*) *peace or war*

250 3. Adversative (opposing) :

sed, vērum, autem, at, atquī, *but*

vērum is stronger than **sed**.

autem, *but*, *however*, is postpositive (follows its word) : **haec autem dīcō**, *but this I say.*

at, *but*, *on the contrary* ; **atquī**, *but yet.*

Also : **tamen**, *however* ; **cēterum**, *but still* ; **vērō**, *but indeed.*

The following pair is often used :

nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*

251 4. Inferential (consequence, result) :

ergō, *therefore* : **cōgitō ergō sum**, *I think, therefore I am.*

igitur, *then*, is often postpositive : **quid igitur faciam?** *what then shall I do?*

itaque, *and so.*

252 5. Causal (reason, explanation) :

nam, namque, enim, etenim, *for*

enim is postpositive : **haec enim dīcō**, *for this I say.*

253 The omission of coördinate conjunctions is called Asyndeton.

vēnī, vīdī, vīcī, *I came and saw and overcame.*

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

254 Subordinate Conjunctions are divided into eight classes:

1. Final (end or purpose):

ut, utī, quō, (*in order*) *that*
nē, quōminus, quīn, *that not*

vēnī ut tē vidērem, (*I came that I might see you*), *I came to see you.*

claudī cūriam jubet, nē quis ēgredī possit, *he orders the senate-chamber to be closed, that no one may be able to leave.*

255 2. Consecutive (completion, result):

ut, (*so*) *that* ut nōn, (*so*) *that not*

tam longē aberam ut nōn vidērem, *I was so far away that I did not see.*

256 3. Temporal (time):

quandō, cum (quom), ubi, *when*
simul, simul ac, simul atque, *as soon as*
dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū, *while, until, as long as*
antequam, priusquam, *before*
postquam, *after*

cum vēr appetit, mīlitēs ex hībernīs movent, *when spring approaches, the soldiers move out-of winter-quarters.*

dum spīrō, spērō, (*as*) *long as I breathe, I hope.*

257 4. Causal (reason, explanation):

quia, quod, quoniam, quandō, *because, inasmuch as*
cum (quom), *since*

gaudeō quod tē interpellāvī, *I am glad* (*because*) *I interrupted you.*

258 5. Concessive (allowing):

quamquam, quamvīs, cum, licet, etsī, *although*

quamvīs ingeniō nōn valet, arte valet, *although he does not succeed by genius, he succeeds by art.*

259 6. Conditional (supposing):

sī, *if*; nisi, nī, *if not*; sīn, *but if*
dum, modo, dummodo, *if only, provided*

sī valēs, bene est, *if you are in health, it is well.*
ōderint dum metuant, *let them hate, provided they fear.*

260 7. Comparative (comparing):

ut, utī, quam, *as*
sīcut, *even as*; prout, *according as*; velut, *just as*
tamquam, quasi, *as if*

perge ut īnstituistī, *go on as you have begun.*

261 8. Interrogative (in questions). These are Adverbs used as Conjunctions (for list see **240**):

quaerō utrum hōc fēceris necne, *I ask whether you did this, or not.*

INTERJECTIONS

262 Interjections are exclamations of surprise, joy, sorrow, disgust, and calling:

ō, *O!*	ō tempora, *O the times!*
ecce, *lo! see!*	ecce Crispīnus, *see!* (*here's*) *Crispinus!*
ēn, *lo here!*	ēn ego, *here I am!*
iō, euoe, *ho!*	iō Bacche, *ho! Bacchus!*
euge, *bravo!*	euge, beātus es quom clāmās, *bravo! you look fine when you're shouting!*
heu, ēheu, *alas!*	ēheu fugācēs lābuntur annī, *alas! the fleeting years glide by.*
vae, *woe!*	vae victīs, *woe to the conquered!*
prō, *for!*	prō pudor, *for shame!*
apage, *get out!*	apage, molestus nē sīs, *get out! don't bother me!*
ohē, *O there!*	ohē jam satis est, *O there! that's enough now.*
heus, eho, *halloo!*	heus tibi dīcō, *halloo* (*there*)*! I'm speaking to you.*

THE FORMATION OF WORDS

263 Words formed from other words are divided into two classes, Derivatives and Compounds.

1. Derivatives are formed by adding endings called Suffixes to the stems of nouns, adjectives, verbs, or adverbs:

fīlius (stem **fīlio-**), *son*	**fīli-olus**, *little son*	**fīli-ola**, *little* [*daughter*
audāx (stem **audāc-**), *bold*	**audāc-ia**, *boldness*	
regō (stem **reg-**), *rule*	**rēx** (= **rēg-s**), *ruler, king*	**rēg-num**, *kingdom*

2. Compounds are formed by linking one word or its stem to another.

The word thus prefixed or added modifies the meaning of the other word, which contains the leading idea. Thus in **red-eō**, *go back*, the leading idea is contained in **eō**, *go*, and is modified in meaning by **red-**, *back*.

I. DERIVATIVES

A. NOUNS

264 *Nouns from Nouns.*

1. Diminutives in

-ulus	**-ula**	**-ulum**
-olus	**-ola**	**-olum**
-culus	**-cula**	**-culum**
-ellus	**-ella**	**-ellum**
-illus	**-illa**	**-illum**

rīv-ulus, *rivulet* (**rīvus**, *stream*)
silv-ula, *little wood* (**silva**, *forest*)
fīli-olus, *young son* (**fīlius**, *son*)
flōs-culus, *floweret* (**flōs**, *flower*)
sac-ellum, *shrine* (**sacrum**, *holy place*)
lap-illus, *pebble* (**lapis**, *stone*)

2. Nouns of Place Where Gathered, ending in -ārium, -ētum, -īle :

aerārium, *treasury* (aes, *money*)
quercētum, *oak grove* (quercus, *oak*)
ovīle, *sheepfold* (ovis, *sheep*)

3. Nouns of Place or Relationship, ending in -īna, -ium :

doctrīna, *teaching* (doctor, *teacher*)
tōnstrīna, *barber shop* (tōnstor, *barber*)
cōnsortium, *companionship* (cōnsors, *consort*)

4. Greek nouns of Descent (Patronymics), ending in -idēs, -īdēs, -adēs ; feminine in -is, -ēis, -ias :

Priamidēs, *son of Priam*
Atrīdēs, *son of Atreus*
Atlantis, *daughter of Atlas*
Nērēis, *daughter of Nereus*

265 *Nouns from Adjectives* are Abstract. The endings -ia, -(i)tia, (i)tās, (i)tūdō denote quality :

audācia, *boldness* (audāx, *bold*)
amīcitia, *friendship* (amīcus, *friendly*)
lībertās, *freedom* (līber, *free*)
fortitūdō, *bravery* (fortis, *brave*)

266 *Nouns from Verbs.*

1. Nouns of Activity or Feeling, ending in -or :

amor, *love*
calor, *warmth* (caleō, *am warm*)

2. Nouns of Personal Agency, ending in -tor (-sor) ; feminine, -trīx :

victor, victrīx, *conqueror*
cursor, *runner*

A few nouns in -tor are derived from nouns : viātor, *traveler* (via, *way*), jānitor, *doorkeeper* (jānua, *door*), funditor, *slinger* (funda, *a sling*).

3. Nouns of Action Going On, ending in -tiō (-siō) and -tus (-sus), genitive -ūs:

actiō, *action, a doing*
ōrātiō, *oration, a speaking*
cōnsēnsiō and cōnsēnsus, *consent, an agreeing*
mōtus, *motion, a moving*
cursus, *race, a running*

4. Nouns of Embodiment of Action (Instrument, Means, Place). These end in -men, -mentum, -crum, -trum, -bulum, -culum:

flūmen, *river* (fluō, *flow*)
ōrnāmentum, *ornament* (ōrnō, *adorn*)
sepulcrum, *grave* (sepultus, *buried*)
arātrum, *a plow* (arō, *plow*)
stabulum, *stall* (stō, *stand*)
vehiculum, *carriage* (vehō, *carry*)

B. ADJECTIVES

267 *Adjectives from Nouns.*

From Common Nouns

1. Adjectives of Material, ending in -eus and -inus:

aur-eus, *golden* (aurum, *gold*)
ferr-eus, *of iron* (ferrum, *iron*)

2. Adjectives meaning Belonging or Pertaining To, ending in

-ius, -icus, -icius
-īlis, -ālis, -āris, -ārius
-nus, -ānus, -īnus, -īvus, -ēnsis, -ester

rēg-ius, *royal* (rēx, *king*)
bell-icus, *warlike* (bellum, *war*)
vir-īlis, *manly* (vir, *man*)
rēg-ālis, *regal* (rēx, *king*)
popul-āris, *popular* (populus, *people*)
pater-nus, *paternal* (pater, *father*)
urb-ānus, *of the city* (urbs, *city*)
mar-īnus, *marine* (mare, *sea*)
aest-īvus, *of summer* (aestās, *summer*)
castr-ēnsis, *of the camp* (castra, *camp*)
camp-ester, *level* (campus, *plain*)

3. Adjectives of Fulness, ending in **-ōsus, -lentus**:

aquōsus, *watery* (**aqua**, *water*) **opulentus**, *wealthy* (**opēs**, *resources*)

4. Adjectives meaning Supplied With, ending in **-tus**:

ālātus, *winged* (**āla**, *wing*) **aurītus**, *having ears* (**auris**, *ear*)
togātus, *gowned* (**toga**, *gown*)

From Proper Nouns

5. Adjectives derived from names of Persons end in **-ānus, -iānus, -īnus**:

Caesariānus, *of Caesar, Caesarian*
Plautīnus, *of Plautus*

6. Adjectives derived from names of Nations end in **-icus, -ius**:

Gallicus, *Gallic*
Syrius, *Syrian*

7. Adjectives derived from names of Places end in

-ānus, -īnus, -ēnsis,
-aeus, -ius, -ās.

Rōmānus, *Roman*
Caudīnus, *Caudine, of Caudium*
Athēniēnsis, *Athenian*
Smyrnaeus, *of Smyrna*
Corinthius, *Corinthian*
Arpīnās, *of Arpinum*

268 *Adjectives from Adjectives.* A few Diminutives only:

parvulus, *little* (**parvus**, *small*)
aureolus, *golden-hued* (**aureus**, *golden*)

269 *Adjectives from Verbs.*

1. Adjectives of Imminent Condition, ending in **-bundus, -cundus**. They are like Present Participles:

moribundus, *going to die, dying* (**morior**, *die*)
īrācundus, *getting enraged* (**īrāscor**, *am angry*)

2. Adjectives of Settled Condition, ending in **-idus**:

calidus, *warm* — **madidus**, *wet*
candidus, *white* — **validus**, *strong*

3. Adjectives of Capability, ending in **-ilis**, **-bilis**:

fragilis, *fragile* (*breakable*) — **mōbilis**, *movable*

4. Adjectives of Tendency, ending in **-āx**, **-ulus**:

audāx, *daring* — **bibulus**, *apt to drink*
loquāx, *talkative* — **crēdulus**, *credulous*

270 *Adjectives from Adverbs*, ending in **-ernus**, **-ternus**, **-tīnus**, **-tinus**:

hodiernus, *of to-day* (**hodiē**)
hesternus, *yester-(day)* (**herī**)
clandestīnus, *secret* (**clam**)
crāstinus, *of to-morrow* (**crās**)

C. VERBS

271 *Verbs from Nouns.*

cūrō, *care for* (**cūra**, *care*) — **metuō**, *fear* (**metus**, *fear*)
lūceō, *shine* (**lūx**, *light*) — **vestiō**, *clothe* (**vestis**, *garment*)

272 *Verbs from Adjectives.*

claudicō, *limp* (**claudus**, *lame*)
levō, *lighten*, *relieve* (**levis**, *light*)
līberō, *set free* (**līber**, *free*)

273 *Verbs from Verbs.*

1. Inceptives, denoting Action Beginning, ending in **-scō**:

horrē-scō, *shudder*, *grow rough* (**horreō**, *dread*, *be rough*)
ob-dormī-scō, *go to sleep* (**dormiō**, *sleep*)

2. Frequentatives, denoting Action Repeated, ending in **-tō**, **-sō**; or in **-itō** when derived from verbs of First Conjugation:

cap-tō, *grasp at* (**capiō**, *take*)
can-tō, *sing on* (**canō**, *sing*)
cur-sō, *run about* (**currō**, *run*)
rog-itō, *keep asking* (**rogō**, *ask*)

But notice:

agitō, *agitate* (from **agō** of Third Conjugation)
haesitō, *hesitate* (from **haereō** of Second Conjugation)

Frequentatives derived from other Frequentatives sometimes occur:

cantitō, *sing on and on* (**cantō**)
cursitō, *keep running about* (**cursō**)

3. Desideratives, denoting Desire to Act, ending in **-uriō**:

ēsuriō, *long to eat, am hungry* (**edō, ēs-se**, *eat*)

II. COMPOUNDS

274 *Nouns.*

1. Noun and Verb:

agri-cola, (*field-tiller*), *farmer*
arm(i)-ger, *armor-bearer*
frātri-cīda, *fratri-cide*

2. Preposition and Noun:

dē-decus, *dis-grace*
in-genium, (*in-born nature*), *disposition*

275 *Adjectives.*

1. Adjective and Noun:

māgn-animus, *great-souled*
miseri-cors, (*tender-hearted*), *merciful*

2. Noun and Verb:

mūni-ficus, *muni-ficent, generous*
parti-ceps, *parti-cipating, sharing*

3. Preposition (or Adverb) and Adjective or Noun (246):

in-dīgnus, *un-worthy* **dē-mēns**, *de-mented*
per-māgnus, *very great* **sē-cūrus**, *care-less*

276 *Verbs.*

1. Noun and Verb:

anim-advertō, *notice* (*turn mind to*)
aedi-ficō, *build* (*make house*)

2. Adjective and Verb:

ampli-ficō, *ampli-fy, enlarge*

3. Verb and Verb:

cale-faciō, *make warm* (cale-ō and faciō)

4. Adverb and Verb:

ne-sciō, *not know, be ignorant*
satis-faciō, *satis-fy* (*do enough*)

5. Preposition and Verb (**246**):

dis-trahō, *draw apart, dis-tract*
red-eō, *go back, re-turn*

THIRD PART: SENTENCES

I. THE SENTENCE IN GENERAL

277 A Sentence is a thought expressed in words. Every Sentence must contain a Subject and a Predicate. The Subject is that which is spoken of; the Predicate is that which is said about the Subject. Thus in the sentence **Caesar pervēnit**, *Caesar arrived*, **Caesar** is the Subject and **pervēnit** is the Predicate. In **errāre hūmānum est**, *to-err is human*, **errāre** is the Subject and **hūmānum est** is the Predicate.

278 The Finite Verb (**157**) always contains a Subject and a Predicate. It alone can make a complete Sentence. Thus **ama-t**, *he loves*. Every Sentence must contain a Verb (**155**), either expressed or understood. In the following the Verb is not expressed, but is understood :

nēmō malus fēlīx, *no bad man* (*is*) *happy*
omne vīvum ex ōvō, *every living-thing* (*comes*) *from the egg*

WAYS OF STATING THE SENTENCE

279 A sentence may be expressed in four ways—

1. Declarative—as a fact:

Caesar Galliam vīcit, *Caesar conquered Gaul.*

2. Interrogative—as a question:

quis Galliam vīcit, *who conquered Gaul?*

3. Imperative—as a command:

Galliam vince, *conquer Gaul!*

4. Exclamatory—as an exclamation:

quot gentēs Caesar vīcit, *how many tribes Caesar conquered!*

DIRECT QUESTIONS[1]

280 Interrogative Sentences (Direct Questions) are divided into—

1. Word-Questions, introduced by interrogative pronouns and adverbs:

quem vidēs, *whom do you see?* **quō vādis**, *whither goest thou?*

2. Sentence-Questions, introduced by **-ne, nōnne, num**:

vidēsne, *do you see?* (expects either *yes* or *no*)
nōnne vidēs, *don't you see?* (expects answer *yes*)
num vidēs, *you don't see?* (expects answer *no*)

Sometimes the Sentence-Question omits the introductory particle: **videō**, *do I see?*

281 Direct Double Questions are introduced by

utrum . . . an (anne)	**-ne . . . an (anne)**
——— . . . an (anne)	**-ne . . . annōn**

ēloquar an sileam, *shall I speak or keep silent?*
utrum honestum est an turpe, *is it honorable or base?*
tūne hōc fēcistī annōn, *did you do this, or not?*

[1] For Indirect Questions see **590**.

282 The Answer to a question is expressed as follows:

1. *Yes*—by repeating the verb, or by **ita**, **certē**, **etiam**, **sānē**, **scīlicet**, **vērō**:

venīsne, *are you coming?* **veniō**, *yes*, or **ita**, *yes.*

2. *No*—by repeating the verb with a negative, or by **nōn**, **nōn ita**, **minimē**:

venīsne, *are you coming?* **nōn veniō**, *no*, or **nōn**, *no.*

283 Questions which have the force of asserting something opposite to the question asked are called Rhetorical Questions:

quis hōc crēdat, *who would believe this?* (nobody).
quis dubitat, *who doubts?* (nobody).

KINDS OF SENTENCES

284 A Simple Sentence contains but one Subject and one Predicate.

A Compound Sentence contains more than one Subject or Predicate.

Simple Sentence: **ego tē amō**, *I love you.*
Compound Sentences:

tū mē amās, ego tē amō, *you love me, I love you.*
dīvide et imperā, *divide and conquer.*

285 Sentences containing more than one Subject or Predicate treated as a single Subject or Predicate are sometimes explained as Simple Sentences and sometimes as shortened Compound Sentences:

pater et māter mortuī sunt, *father-and-mother are dead.*
pater vīvit atque valet, *father is-alive-and-well.*

Every Compound Sentence is made up of two or more sentences called Clauses.

286 The Clauses of a Compound Sentence are called Coördinate when they are parallel independ-

ent sentences. Thus **sōl ruit et montēs umbrantur**, *the sun descends and the mountains are shadowed*, consists of two independent sentences, **sōl ruit** and **montēs umbrantur**.

287 A Clause which is governed by another is called dependent or Subordinate. Thus in **cum sōl ruit, montēs umbrantur**, *when the sun descends, the mountains are shadowed*, **cum sōl ruit** is a Subordinate Clause stating the Time of **montēs umbrantur**, the leading or Principal Clause.

HOW WORDS ARE COMBINED IN SENTENCES

288 Words are combined in five ways. Each word either—

1. Agrees With,
2. Governs,
3. Depends On (or Is Governed By),
4. Introduces, or
5. Connects

some other word or words.

1. Agreement. In **vir māgnus**, *a great man*, the adjective **māgnus** agrees with the noun **vir** in Gender (masculine), Number (singular), and Case (nominative).

2. Government. In **montem videō**, *I see the mountain*, the verb **videō** governs **montem**.

3. Dependence. In **montem videō**, *I see the mountain*, the noun **montem** is governed in the Accusative Case by the verb **videō**.

4. Introduction. In **sī venīs**, *if you come*, the conjunction **sī** introduces the verb **venīs**.

5. Connection. In **pater et māter**, *father and mother*, the conjunction **et** connects the nouns **pater** and **māter**.

IMPORTANT RULES FOR COMBINING WORDS

289 The following rules are so important that they should be learned at the start:

I. The Subject of a Finite Verb is in the Nominative:

hōra vēnit, *the hour has come.*

The Subject must be a noun or a substitute for a noun—for example, a pronoun, an infinitive, or a clause:

quis scrībit, *who writes?*
errāre hūmānum est, *to-err is human.*
accidit ut esset lūna plēna, (*it*) *happened that-it-was-full-moon.*

The Subject is always implied in the personal ending of the verb:

ama-t, *he loves*, **amā-mus**, *we love.*

290 #### II. A Predicate Noun agrees with its Subject in Case.

A Predicate Noun is one which explains another noun referring to the same thing, and is connected with it by some verb of Being, Seeming, Becoming, or the like:

Rōmulus rēx fuit, *Romulus was king.*
Cicerō factus est cōnsul, *Cicero became consul.*
rēgīna colōrum lūx est, *light is the queen of colors.*

The Predicate Nouns above are **rēx**, **cōnsul**, **rēgīna**.

When possible, a Predicate Noun agrees with its Subject in Gender:

Masculine: **ūsus magister est**, *experience is a teacher.*
Feminine: **vīta magistra est**, *life is a teacher.*

291 ## III. An Appositive (Noun) agrees with its Subject in Case.

An Appositive is a noun (or its substitute) which explains another noun referring to the same thing, and is joined to it without any connecting word:

urbs Rōma, *the city Rome.*
flūmen Rhēnus, *the river Rhine.*
Vergilius poëta, *Virgil the poet.*

292 1. When possible, the Appositive agrees with its Subject in Gender and Number:

Ōrīon vēnātor, *Orion the hunter.*
voluptās adsentātrīx, *pleasure the flatterer.*
But, **Tullia, dēliciae meae**, *Tullia, my darling.*

2. Partitive Apposition:

duo itinera, ūnum per Sēquanōs, alterum per prōvinciam, *two routes, one through the Sequani, the other through the province.*

ūnum and **alterum** are in Partitive Apposition.

3. A common noun in Apposition with a Locative (55) is put in the Ablative:

Antiochīae, celebrī urbe, *at Antioch, a famous city.*

293 ## IV. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in Gender, Number, and Case.

Like Adjectives in Agreement are Pronouns and Participles.

servus bonus, *a good slave*	**dī māgnī**, *the great gods*
bona fidēs, *good faith*	**duae partēs**, *two parts*
oleum bonum, *good oil*	**tria verba**, *three words*
illa mulier, *that woman*	**sōl oriēns**, *the rising sun*

294 1. With two or more Nouns the Adjective is usually in the Plural Number, but sometimes agrees with the nearest:

Nīsus et Euryalus **prīmī**, *Nisus and Euryalus first.*
pater **meus** et māter, *my father and mother.*

2. With a Collective Noun (singular in form and plural in meaning) the Adjective may be of the Number and Gender which suit the meaning of the Noun:

pars certāre **parātī**, *part ready to fight.*
pars **melior**, *the better part.*
mīlle **captī** sunt, *a thousand (men) are captured.*

3. A Neuter Adjective is sometimes used to bring out better the sense intended:

mors est **extrēmum**, *death is the last (thing).*

295 With two or more Nouns in different Genders—

1. An Attributive Adjective usually agrees with one noun:

cūncta maria terraeque, *all seas and lands.*

2. A Predicate Adjective is Masculine when the nouns denote persons, and Neuter when the nouns denote things:

pater et māter **mortuī** sunt, *father and mother are dead.*
īra et odium **turpia** sunt, *anger and hatred are base.*

When the nouns include both persons and things, the Adjective may be Masculine or Neuter:

rēx rēgiaque classis ūnā **profectī**, *the king and the royal fleet set sail together.*
nātūrā **inimīca** sunt lībera cīvitās et rēx, *hostile by nature are a free state and a king.*

Note.—An Attributive Adjective is one which modifies its Subject directly: vīta **brevis**, *a short life.* A Predicate Adjective is one which modifies its Subject by the help of a Verb to which it is joined: vīta **brevis** est, *life is short*, ars est **longa**, *art is long.*

296 V. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person:

tempus fugit, *time flies* (singular number, third person).
nōs dēsumus, *we fail* (plural number, first person).

With One Subject

297 1. Sometimes the Verb is Plural when its Subject in the Singular is used in a plural sense:

multitūdō abeunt, *the multitude depart.*
uterque eōrum exercitum ēdūcunt, *they each lead forth (their) army.*

2. When the Predicate Noun (**290**) stands nearer than the Subject to the Verb, the Verb agrees with the Predicate Noun:

amantium īrae amōris integrātiō est, *lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.*

3. Sometimes the Verb agrees with the Appositive (**291**) instead of the Subject:

Corinthus, tōtīus Graeciae lūmen, exstīnctum est, *Corinth, the light of all Greece, is put out.*

4. The participial forms (**167**. 3) of the Verb agree with the Subject in Gender, Number, and Person:

dēlenda est Karthāgō, *Carthage must be destroyed.*

With More Than One Subject

298 1. With two or more Subjects the Verb may agree in Number with one or all of them:

ego et Cicerō valēmus, *Cicero and I are well.*
et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor in perīculō versātur, *camp, legions, and commander are involved in peril.*

2. With subjects of different Person the Verb agrees with the first person rather than the second or third, and with the second rather than the third:

ego et tū valēmus, *you and I are well.*
ego et Tullia valēmus, *Tullia and I are well.*
tū et Tullia valētis, *you and Tullia are well.*

3. With Subjects of different Gender participial forms (**167**. 3) of the Verb follow the rule for Predicate Adjectives (**295**. 2).

299 VI. The Relative Pronoun (**147**) agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

The Antecedent is the word to which the Relative Pronoun refers:

is minimō eget, quī minimum cupit, *he needs least, who wants least.*

liber, quem legis, meus est, *the book (which) you are reading is mine.*

flūmen, quod in Rhodanum influit, *a river which empties into the Rhone.*

300 When there is more than one Antecedent the Relative follows the rule for Predicate Adjectives (**295**. 2):

pater et fīlius, quī sunt mortuī, *father and son, who are dead.*
pater et māter, quī sunt mortuī, *father and mother, who are dead.*

dīvitiae et honōrēs, quae sunt cadūca, *riches and honors, which are perishable (things).*

Variations in Agreement

301 1. The Relative usually agrees with an Appositive (**291**) or a Predicate Noun (**290**), rather than with its Antecedent:

flūmen Ōxus, quī semper turbidus est, *the river Oxus, which is always muddy.*

Here **quī** agrees with the masculine Appositive **Ōxus**, and not with **flūmen**, the neuter Antecedent.

Thēbae, quod est caput Boeōtiae, *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

Here **quod** agrees with the neuter singular Predicate

Noun **caput**, and not with **Thēbae**, the feminine plural Antecedent:

2. The Relative sometimes agrees with the sense rather than with the form of the Antecedent:

equitātum praemittit, quī videant, *he sends forth cavalry to see* (literally, *who may see*).

Here **quī** is plural, agreeing with the plural sense rather than with the singular form of **equitātum**.

Attraction of the Relative

302 1. The Relative is sometimes attracted into the case of its Antecedent:

nātus eō patre quō dīxī, *born of the father that I said.*

Instead of **quem dīxī**.

2. In poetry the Antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the Relative (Inverse Attraction):

urbem quam statuō, vestra est, *the city* (*which*) *I build is yours.*

Instead of the regular **urbs, quam statuō, vestra est**.

The Antecedent

303 1. The Antecedent is sometimes omitted:

quod scrīpsī, scrīpsī, *what I have written, I have written.*

2. The Antecedent is sometimes repeated in the Relative clause:

erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exīre possent, *there were two routes by which* (*routes*) *they could go out.*

3. The Antecedent is often placed in the Relative clause:

Amānus, quī mōns erat hostium plēnus, *Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies.*

Instead of **mōns Amānus, quī erat**.

quam quisque nōvit artem, in hāc sē exerceat, *what trade each one understands,* (*in*) *that let him practise* (*himself*).

304 1. The Relative is never omitted, as it is in English:

īdem sum quī semper fuī, *I am the same I always was.*

2. The Relative is often used with the force of a Demonstrative (141), especially at the beginning of a sentence:

quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so, since this is so.*
quae quī audiēbant, (*those*) *who heard this.*
quō cōgnitō, *this* (*being*) *known, when this was known.*

When the Relative refers to a whole sentence as its Antecedent, **quod** or **quae rēs** is used:

sapientēs sōlī, quod est proprium dīvitiārum, contentī sunt rēbus suīs, *the wise alone are content with their own, which is the true mark of riches.*
multae cīvitātēs dēfēcērunt; quae rēs multōrum bellōrum causa fuit, *many states revolted; a thing that was the cause of many wars.*

In the same way **id quod** is used in clauses containing incidental or passing statements (*by the way*):

sī ā vōbīs dēserar, id quod nōn spērō, tamen nōn dēficiam, *if I am to be deserted by you, a thing* (*by the way*) *I do not expect, still I shall not fail.*

Here **id** is in apposition with the clause **sī ā vōbīs dēserar**, which is used as Antecedent.

II. THE USES OF NOUNS

305 The various uses of the six Cases (55) make up the Syntax of the Noun. The Cases are best studied in the following order:

1. Nominative	Used as Subject
2. Vocative	Used in Direct Address
3. Accusative	Used as Direct Object
4. Dative	Used as Indirect Object
5. Genitive	Used like an Adjective
6. Ablative	Used like an Adverb

NOMINATIVE

306 The Nominative is used, as already explained,

1. As the Subject of a Finite Verb (**289**).
2. As a Predicate Noun (**290**).
3. As an Appositive (**291**, **292**).

VOCATIVE

307 The Vocative is regularly the Case of Direct Address, with or without an Interjection:

ō dī immortālēs, *O immortal gods!*
audī, fīlī mī, *hear, my son!*

But the Nominative is sometimes used in a similar way:

ō festus diēs, *O happy day!*
audī tū, populus Albānus, *hear, Alban people!*

ACCUSATIVE

1. THE DIRECT OBJECT

308 The Direct Object of an Active Transitive Verb is in the Accusative.

Verbs which take a Direct Object are called Transitive (passing-over), because the action of such Verbs passes over to or ends on an object.

The Direct Object is usually the Person or Thing on which the Verb acts directly (Object Affected), but is sometimes the Result Produced by the action (Object Effected):

Rōmulus Remum interfēcit, *Romulus killed Remus.* Here **Remum** is the Object Affected.

Rōmulus Rōmam condidit, *Romulus founded Rome.* Here **Rōmam** is the Object Effected.

309 Intransitive verbs of Feeling are often used transitively:

meum cāsum doleō, *I grieve-at my misfortune.*

310 Also verbs of Tasting and Smelling:

piscis mare sapit, *the fish smacks-of the sea.*
vīnum redolēns, *smelling-of wine.*

311 Many intransitive verbs of Motion become transitive when compounded with prepositions.

These include all compounded with circum, per, praeter, subter, trāns; many with ad, in, super; and some with ante, con, inter, ob, sub:

Mutinam circumsedent, *they besiege* (*sit-around*) *Mutina.*
agrum percurrit. *he overruns the territory.*
proelium inīre, *to begin* (*go-into*) *the battle.*
flūmen trānsiit, *he went-across the river.*
subīre perīculum, *to under-go danger.*

312 Many verbs, commonly intransitive, take as the Object a neuter pronoun or adjective:

id gaudeō, *I am glad-of that.*
idem glōrior, *I make the same boast.*
utrumque dolet, *he is grieved-at both.*
multa taceō, *I keep-silent-about many* (*things*).

313 Some intransitive verbs take as an Object a noun of kindred meaning (Cognate Accusative):

vītam beātam vīvere, *to live a happy life.*
mīrum somnium somniāvī, *I dreamed a wondrous dream.*

314 Many Impersonal verbs (**233**) take an Accusative of the Person as Object:

pudet tē, *you are ashamed* (*it shames you*).
nisi mē fallit, *unless I am mistaken.*

315 A few verbs in the Passive voice are used in a reflexive sense, and thus take an Accusative as Object:

galeam induitur, *he puts on his helmet* (literally, *he puts-on-himself his helmet*).

316 The Accusative is sometimes used as an Adverb:

māximam partem lacte vīvunt, *they live on milk for the most part.*

The following are in common use:

multum, *much*	**nihil**, *not at all*
plūrimum, *very greatly*	**nōn nihil**, *somewhat*
plērumque, *usually*	**quid**, *why?* (*for what?*)

2. TWO ACCUSATIVES—SAME PERSON OR THING

317 Verbs of Making, Choosing, Calling, Showing, and the like, may take two Accusatives, one the Direct Object and the other a Predicate Noun or Adjective:

Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt, *they informed Caesar* (literally, *made Caesar more-certain*).

urbem Rōmam vocāvit, *he called the city Rome.*

In the Passive both the Object and Predicate become nominatives:

Caesar certior factus est, *Caesar was informed.*

urbs Rōma vocāta est, *the city was called Rome.*

3. TWO ACCUSATIVES—PERSON AND THING

318 Some verbs of Asking, Demanding, Teaching, and Concealing take two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing:

After verbs of Asking the Accusative of the Thing is commonly a neuter Pronoun:

hōc tē rogō, *I ask you this.*

quis tē litterās docuit, *who taught you* (*your*) *letters?*

nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem, *I did not conceal the conversation* (*from*) *you.*

Catōnem sententiam rogāvit, *he asked Cato* (*his*) *opinion.*

In the Passive the Accusative of the Person becomes a nominative, and the Accusative of the Thing remains accusative:

Catō sententiam rogātus est, *Cato was asked (his) opinion.*

319 Instead of the Accusative of the Person the Ablative with **ab**, **dē** or **ex** is used with most verbs of Asking:

petō / **postulō** } **ā tē**; but **quaerō ex (ā, dē) tē.**

320 Some compounds of **trāns** take two accusatives:

mīlitēs flūmen trādūxit, *he led the soldiers across the river.*

4. ACCUSATIVE OF PART AFFECTED (GREEK ACCUSATIVE)

321 This accusative is used chiefly in poetry and with reference to some part of the human body. It is sometimes called the Accusative of Specification:

mīles frāctus membra, *a soldier shattered (in his) limbs.*
tremis ossa pavōre, *you shiver (in your) bones from fear.*

It occurs with Adjectives, as well as Verbs:

nūda genū, *bared (to) the knee.*
ōs deō similis, *like a god (in) countenance.*

5. AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE

322 The Subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative:

Caesarem adesse nūntiat, *he announces that Caesar is present.*

6. IN EXCLAMATIONS

323 The Accusative is used in Exclamations:

mē miserum, *wretched me!*
ēn quattuor ārās, *lo! four altars!*

7. TIME AND SPACE

324 Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative:

decem annōs nātus, *ten years old* (*born ten years*).
sex mīlia passuum prōcēdit, *he advances six miles.*

Duration of Time is sometimes expressed by the Accusative with **per**:

per tōtum diem, (*throughout*) *the whole day.*

8. LIMIT OF MOTION

325 The Limit of Motion is expressed by the Accusative.

1. Always without a Preposition are **domum**, *home*, **rūs**, *the country*, **forās**, *out-doors:*

domum redī, *go back home!*
rūs ībō, *I shall go to the country.*
effūgī forās, *I fled out-doors.*

2. Usually without a Preposition are names of Towns, Little Islands, and Peninsulas:

Rōmam proficīscitur, *he sets out for Rome.*
cōnfūgit Dēlum, *she fled to Delos.*
Chersonēsum pervēnit, *he arrived at the Chersonesus.*

3. Otherwise **ad** or **in** is generally used:

ad Genāvam pervēnit, *he arrived at* (*near*) *Geneva.*
Hannibal exercitum in Ītaliam dūxit, *Hannibal led his army into Italy.*

DATIVE

I. THE INDIRECT OBJECT

326 The Indirect Object is in the Dative.

The Indirect Object is that *to* which anything is done:

hōc tibi dīcō, *I tell you this.*

327 This use of the Dative occurs—

1. With transitive verbs having a Direct Object:

dō tibi librum, *I give you a book.*

sēsē fugae mandāvērunt, *they betook themselves to flight.*

pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit, *he prefers honor to money* (*places honor before money*).

328 Some verbs admit two constructions.

Dative and Accusative:

urbī mūrōs circumdat, *he puts walls around the city.*

Accusative and Ablative:

urbem mūrīs circumdat, *he surrounds the city with walls.*

329 Like the Indirect Object is the Dative used in poetry to express the Direction of Motion:

it clāmor caelō, *the shout goes up to heaven.*

330 2. With many intransitive verbs meaning

Favor, *Please*, *Trust*, *Assist* (and their opposites),
Command, *Obey*, *Serve*, *Resist*,
Threaten, *Pardon*, *Spare*, *Persuade*; and the like:

quae vīdī, mihi placent, *what I have seen pleases me.*

huic legiōnī Caesar cōnfīdēbat māximē, *Caesar trusted this legion most.*

bonīs nocet quī malīs parcit, *he harms the good who spares the bad.*

mihi crēde, *believe me!*

But **dēlectō**, *delight*, and **juvō**, *assist*, take the Accusative.

331 In the Passive such verbs are used impersonally only, and retain the Dative:

mihi persuādētur, *I am being persuaded* (*it is persuaded to me*).

nūllī parcitur, *none is spared* (*it is spared to no one*).

332 3. With almost all verbs compounded with

ad, ante, con,
in, inter, ob,
post, prae, prō,
sub, and **super**:
and sometimes **circum**.

adfuit hīs pūgnīs, *he was present at these battles.*
parva māgnīs cōnferre, *to compare small with great.*
pontō nox incubat ātra, *black night broods on the deep.*

333 4. With many Adjectives and a few Nouns and Adverbs.

These include Adjectives meaning

Useful, *Pleasant*, *Friendly*, *Fit*,
Like, *Equal*, *Near*, and *Dear*,

with others of like or opposite meaning:

mihi amīcissimus, *most friendly to me.*
canis similis lupō est, *a dog is like a wolf.*
sunt proximī Germānīs, *they are next to the Germans.*

The Nouns and Adverbs thus used are derived from words which govern the Dative:

obtemperātiō lēgibus, *obedience to the laws.*
convenienter nātūrae vīvere, *to live agreeably to nature.*

II. DATIVE OF PERSON OR THING CONCERNED

334 This Dative expresses that *for* or *with regard to* which anything is or is done. It includes the following different uses:

335 1. Dative of Reference, denoting the object interested or referred to:

mīlitibus spem minuit, *as for the soldiers, it lessened their hopes.*

nōn scholae sed vītae discimus, *we are learning, not for school, but for life.*

erit ille mihi semper deus, *to me (in my eyes) he will ever be a god.*

336 The personal pronouns are sometimes used in a similar way to give a light touch of special reference (Ethical Dative):

at tibi repente vēnit Canīnius, *but, (mark) you! all at once in came Caninius.*

quid sibi vult? *what does he mean? (wish so far as concerns himself).*

337 Here belongs the Dative used with verbs of Separation,—compounds of **ab, dē, ex**:

sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite, *keep the hot sun from the flock.*

silicī scintillam excūdit, *he struck a spark from the flint.*

338 Also Dative of the Supposed Standpoint,—always a participle:

Gomphī est oppidum prīmum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpīrō, *Gomphi is the first town of Thessaly as you come (to those coming) from Epirus.*

339 ## 2. Dative of the Agent, denoting the person acting.

This is used with Passive forms, especially with the Gerundive and the compound tenses of the Passive Voice:

ratiō nōbīs reddenda est, *we must give an account (as for us, our account must be given).*

mihi cōnsilium captum est, *my plan is formed (as for me, my plan is formed).*

340 ## 3. Dative of the Possessor.

This is used with the verb **esse**. Here **est mihi** means *I have.*

est mihi liber, *I have a book.*
sunt tibi librī, *you have books.*

With **nōmen est** the name may be Nominative or Dative:

fōns cui nōmen Arethūsa est, *a fount whose name is Arethusa.*

nōmen Arctūrō est mihi, *my name is Arcturus.*

III. PREDICATE DATIVE

341 The Predicate Dative is of two kinds, the Dative of Tendency and the Dative of Purpose.

342 1. Dative of Tendency, denoting what a thing tends to be.

This is used with verbs of Being and Considering:

est cūrae, *it is (for) a care.*

vitiō dūcere, *to count it (as) a fault.*

343 2. Dative of Purpose, denoting what a thing is meant to be:

colloquiō diem dīcunt, *they name a day for the interview.*

receptuī canere, *to sound (for) a retreat.*

344 Adjectives meaning Useful or Suitable (**333**) are used with a Dative which is like the Dative of Purpose:

castrīs locus idōneus, *a place fit for a camp.*

345 A Predicate Dative often occurs along with the Dative of Reference (**335**):

cui bonō est? *to whom is it (any) good?*

hōc mihi nēmō vitiō dūcat, *may no one count this against me as a fault.*

GENITIVE

346 The Genitive, or Adjective Case, defines or explains the word it modifies. It is used chiefly with nouns, adjectives, or verbs, and is usually

to be translated by the preposition *of*. The Genitive is used in three ways—as an Attribute, a Predicate, and an Object-Case with Verbs.

I. ATTRIBUTIVE GENITIVE

347 The Attributive Genitive is used chiefly with nouns and adjectives. It adds to or explains more precisely the meaning of the word it modifies. It includes the following uses:

348 1. Genitive of Exact Definition, expressing the particular sense to which the modified word is limited:

diēs profectiōnis, *day of departure.*
nōmen amīcitiae, *the name "friendship."*
prīdiē ējus diēī, *on the day before that day.*
cōpiae peditātūs equitātūsque, *forces of infantry and cavalry.*
(Origin) **Mārcī fīlius**, *the son of Marcus.*
(Material) **pondus aurī**, *a mass of gold.*

349 This Genitive also occurs before **causā**, *by reason, on account*, and **grātiā**, *for the sake*:

ējus causā, *on his account.*
exemplī grātiā, *for the sake of example.*

350 2. Subjective Genitive, denoting the subject of the action implied in the modified word:

amor patris, *a father's love.*
illud Platōnis, *that (saying) of Plato.*

351 3. Objective Genitive, denoting the object of the action implied in the modified word:

amor patriae, *love of country.*
vēnditiō bonōrum, *a sale of goods.*

352 Many adjectives and participles take the Objective Genitive:

immemor beneficiī, *forgetful of a kindness.*
avidus glōriae, *eager for glory.*
amantēs patriae, *lovers of (their) country.*

353 4. Possessive Genitive, denoting possession:

domus Cicerōnis, *Cicero's house.*

354 5. Genitive of Quality, denoting the kind or quality of the modified word. Used along with an Adjective:

vir māgnae auctōritātis, *a man of great influence.*
flōrēs mīlle colōrum, *flowers of a thousand hues.*
puer novem annōrum, *a boy of nine years.*
fossa quīndecim pedum, *a trench fifteen feet (wide).*

Under this are included the Genitives of Number, Measure, Time, and Space.

For the Ablative of Quality see **394**.

355 6. Genitive of the Whole, denoting the whole of which the modified word is a part.

It is also called the Partitive Genitive. It occurs

356 (1) With nouns, adjectives (in comparative and superlative), pronouns, and numerals (**130**):

pars equitātūs, *part of the cavalry.*
mīlle passuum, *a thousand paces, a mile.*
minor frātrum, *the younger of the brothers.*
ultimus Rōmānōrum, *the last of the Romans.*
quis vestrum, *who of you?*

With numerals the Ablative with **dē** or **ex** is common: **ūnus dē multīs**, *one of many.*

357 (2) With the Neuter Singular of some adjectives and pronouns, and the adverbs **satis** and **parum**:

reliquum vītae, *the rest of life.*
quid cōnsiliī, *what plan?*
satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum, *eloquence enough, (but) little sense.*

358 (3) Occasionally with adverbs of Place:

eō locī, *at that point* (literally, *there of the place*).
ubi terrārum, *where in the world?*

II. PREDICATE GENITIVE

359 A Genitive used with a verb to assert something of the modified word is called a Predicate Genitive. Thus:

domus est Cicerōnis, *the house is Cicero's.*

360 The Possessive Genitive (353), Genitive of Quality (354), and Genitive of the Whole (355) are sometimes used as Predicate Genitives:

domus est Cicerōnis, *the house is Cicero's.*
fossa quīndecim pedum est facta, *the trench was made fifteen feet (wide).*
quid suī cōnsiliī sit, ostendit, *he shows what his plan is.*

361 The Genitive of Indefinite Price or Value is used with verbs of Valuing:

quantī est, *how much is it?*
tantī aestimātur, *it is valued at so much.*
parvī dūcō, *I think it worth (but) little.*

362 The verbs most used are esse, *be (worth)*, dūcere, *think (it worth)*, facere, *account (it worth)*, putāre, *suppose (it worth)*, habērī, *be held*, and aestimāre, *value.*

The genitives most used are the neuter adjectives

tantī, quantī,
māgnī, plūris, plūrimī,
parvī, minōris, minimī.

363 **tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris,** are also used with verbs of Buying and Selling:

quantī aedēs vēndis, *for how much are you selling your house?*

For the Ablative of Price see **395**.

III. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE WITH VERBS

364 1. The Genitive is used with verbs of Memory.

But the Accusative of the Direct Object may occur with these verbs.

meminī, *I remember*, **reminīscor,** *I recall*, **oblīvīscor,** *I forget*,

(*a*) With Persons, usually take the Genitive:

mementō meī, *remember me.*

oblītus meōrum, *forgetting my (friends).*

reminīscor, *I recall*, is rarely used of Persons.

(*b*) With Things, take the Genitive or Accusative:

cōnsiliōrum meminī, *I remember your advice.*

reminīscerētur prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum, *he should recall the old-time valor of the Helvetians.*

oblīvīscī nihil solēs nisi injūriās, *you are wont to forget nothing, except insults.*

NOTE 1.—With neuter pronouns and adjectives the Accusative is regular:

forsan et haec ōlim meminisse juvābit, *perchance some day we shall be glad to remember this too.*

NOTE 2.—**meminī,** meaning *recall*, takes the Accusative:

Cinnam meminī, *I recall Cinna.*

365 **recordor,** *I call to mind*, never takes the Genitive:

cōnsilia recordor, *I call to mind his counsel.*

The Impersonal **in mentem venit,** *it comes to mind*, takes the Genitive:

Platōnis mihi in mentem venit, *Plato comes to my mind.*

366 Verbs of Reminding take the Genitive of the Thing with an Accusative of the Person:

tē veteris amīcitiae admoneō, *I remind you of our old friendship.*

367 2. The Genitive is used with some verbs of Judicial Action.

These include verbs of Accusing, Acquitting, Convicting, and Condemning. They take the Genitive of the Thing charged and an Accusative of the Person:

mē fūrtī īnsimulat, *he falsely-accuses me of theft.*
Catilīnam mājestātis damnāre, *to condemn Catiline for treason.*
reum capitis absolvere, *to acquit the prisoner of a capital crime* (*of his head*).

But the Penalty is in the Ablative:

reum capite damnāre, *to condemn the prisoner to death* (*with his head, head and all*).

368 3. The Genitive is used with some Verbs of Feeling and Concern, generally Impersonal (233).

(1) With verbs of Feeling.

These are (**misereor**), **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet**. The Impersonal Verbs take a Genitive of that which causes the feeling, and an Accusative of the person who experiences the feeling:

nōnne tē miseret meī, *are you not sorry for me?*
mē pudet factī, *I am ashamed of what-I-did* (*the deed*).
miserēre meī, *pity me!* (Personal.)

A Neuter or Infinitive may be used instead of a Genitive:

tē hōc pudet, *you are ashamed of this.*
pudet mē dissentīrī, *I am ashamed to disagree.*

369 (2) With **interest** and **rēfert**.

(*a*) The one concerned is in the Genitive:

reī pūblicae interest, *it concerns the state.*

In place of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessive Pronoun is used:

meā rēfert, nostrā rēfert.

(*b*) The cause of concern is the Subject, and is expressed by

A Neuter Pronoun **id rēfert meā,** *that interests me.*

An Infinitive **meā interest tē valēre,** *your health concerns me.*

A Clause **quicquid dīxeris meā interest,** *whatever you say concerns me.*

(*c*) The degree of concern is expressed by

An Adverb **māgnopere rēfert,** *it greatly concerns.*

nihil interest, *it makes no difference.*

A Genitive of Value (361) **parvī interest,** *it makes little difference.*

370 4. The Genitive is occasionally used with Verbs of Plenty or Want:

egeō cōnsiliī, *I need advice.*

hōc bellum indiget celeritātis, *this war requires speed.*

These verbs, except **indigeō**, usually take the Ablative (375).

371 5. The Genitive is occasionally used with Verbs of Partaking and Acquiring:

potīrī rērum, *to get control of affairs.*

The Ablative of Means is the usual construction (387).

ABLATIVE

372 The Ablative, or Adverbial case, is principally used to modify verbs and adjectives. It contains three different meanings, corresponding

to three cases which originally were separate but later were blended in one. The three meanings are as follows:

I. Whence?
Ablative Proper, translated by *from*.

II. Wherewith?
Instrumental, translated by *with* or *by*.

III. Where?
Locative, translated by *in* or *at*.

I. THE ABLATIVE PROPER

373 The Ablative Proper includes the

1. Ablative of Separation.
2. Ablative of Source.
3. Ablative of Agent.
4. Ablative of Comparison.

374 1. The Ablative of Separation is used with or without a preposition.

375 (1) Usually without a preposition after verbs and adjectives meaning Relieve, Deprive, Need, Lack:

metū līberātus, *freed from fear*.
hostēs armīs exuit, *he stripped the enemy of their weapons*.
egeō cōnsiliō, *I need advice* (**370**).
vacuus cūrīs, *free from cares*.

376 (2) With or without a preposition after verbs meaning Refrain, Keep Off, Remove, Depart:

abstinēre injūriā, *to abstain from injury*.
ē cīvitāte pulsus est, *he was expelled from the state*.
urbe cessit, *he withdrew from the city*.

377 (3) Usually with a preposition after other verbs of Separation, especially compounds of **ab-**, **dis-**, **sē-**:

Rōma longē abest ab Athēnīs, *Rome is far distant from Athens.*

Britannī differunt ā Gallīs, *Britons differ from Gauls.*

378 2. The Ablative of Source is used with participles denoting Birth:

Rōmulus deō nātus, *Romulus, born of a god.*
summō locō nātus, *of high birth.*
ēdite rēgibus, *O descendant of kings.*

With pronouns **ex** is used: **ex mē nātus**, *my son* (literally, *sprung from me*).

To express remote ancestry **ab** is used: **Belgae sunt ortī ab Germānīs**, *the Belgians are descended from the Germans.*

Here belongs the Ablative of Material, often with **ex**: **scūta ex cortice facta**, *shields made of bark.*

379 3. The Ablative of the Personal Agent is used with **ab** after passive verbs:

rēx ab suīs appellātur, *he is called king by his own (men).* For the Dative of the Agent see **339**.

380 4. The Ablative of Comparison may be used when the first of two things compared is in the nominative or accusative:

quis Cicerōne ēloquentior, *who more eloquent than Cicero?*

But with these cases **quam**, *than*, may be used, and with all other cases must be used (**415**).

381 Whenever Comparatives are used with **quam**, *than*, the two things compared are in the same case:

Caesar minor est quam Cicerō, *Caesar is younger than Cicero.*

382 The neuter comparatives **plūs, minus, amplius, longius,** are often used adverbially without affecting the case:

plūs septingentī captī, *over seven hundred (were) captured.*
minus quīnque mīlia, *under five miles.*

II. THE INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE

383 The Instrumental Ablative includes the following Ablatives:

1. Cause.
2. Means.
3. Manner.
4. Accompaniment.
5. Degree of Difference.
6. Quality.
7. Price.
8. Specification.
9. Ablative Absolute.

384 1. The Ablative is used to denote Cause:

seu īrā seu odiō seu superbiā nūllam vocem ēmīsit, *whether from anger or hate or pride, he uttered not a word.*
Jovis jussū veniō, *I come at Jove's command.*

385 This use is common with verbs of Feeling and Trusting:

maerōre discrucior, *I am distracted by reason of grief.*
nōn movētur pecūniā, *he is not swerved by money.*
nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant, *they trusted in the nature of their position.*

386 2. The Ablative is used to denote the Means or Instrument:

oculīs vidēmus, *we see with our eyes.*
minimō contentus, *content with very little.*

387 The following uses of the Ablative of Means should be noticed: (1) With the deponent verbs **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** and their compounds:

ūtī cōnsiliō, *to use advice.*
victōriā potīrī, *to gain a victory (become master by a victory).* See **371.**
lacte vescuntur, *they live on milk (feed themselves with milk).*

388 (2) With words of Consisting, Abounding, and Filling:

tōtum montem hominibus complēvit, *he filled the whole mountain with men.*

389 (3) With many other expressions, such as—

cōnsiliō nōbīs opus est, *we need advice.*
quid mē fīet, *what will become of me?* (*be done with me*).
victōriīs frētus, *relying on* (*his*) *victories.*
pilā lūdere, *to play ball* (*with a ball*).
fugā salūtem petere, *to seek safety in* (*by*) *flight.*
proeliō lacessere, *to provoke to* (*by*) *battle.*

390 3. The Ablative of Manner is regularly used with the preposition **cum**:

cum virtūte vīvere, *to live virtuously.*

But **cum** may be omitted when there is an adjective agreeing with the ablative noun:

māgnā gravitāte loquī, *to speak with much dignity.*

391 Here may be included the Ablative of Accordance, which is used without **cum**:

mōre et exemplō, *according to custom and precedent.*

Also the Ablative of Attendant Circumstance:

Capuam vēnī māximō imbrī, *I came to Capua in a very heavy shower.*

392 4. The Ablative of Accompaniment is regularly used with the preposition **cum**:

cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre, *to depart with all their forces.*

In military expressions **cum** is sometimes omitted:

omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt, *they marched with all their forces.*

393 5. The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with comparatives and words suggesting comparison:

ūnō pede longior, *one foot longer* (*by one foot*).
paulō post, *a little afterwards* (*by a little*).
multō mālim, *I should much prefer.*

394 6. The Ablative with an Adjective is used to express Quality:

mīlle colōribus arcus, *a rainbow of a thousand hues.*
flūmen rīpīs praeruptīs, *a river with steep banks.*
bonō animō es, *be of good courage.*

For the Genitive of Quality see **354**.

395 7. The Ablative is used to express Definite or Indefinite Price:

aedēs duōbus talentīs ēmit, *he bought the house for two talents.*
aurō virī vītam vēndidit, *she sold her husband's life for gold.*

Indefinite Price is often expressed by **māgnō**, **parvō**, **plūrimō**, **minimō**, or by the Genitive (**361–363**).

396 8. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done:

virtūte praestāre, *to excel in valor.*
Gallī linguā differunt, *the Gauls differ in language.*
mājor nātū, *older* (*greater in point of age*).

The Ablative with **dīgnus** and **indīgnus** belongs here:

fidē dīgnus, *worthy of belief.*
indīgna relātū, *things not worth telling.*

397 9. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, combined with a participle and used adverbially, is said to be in the Ablative Absolute:

Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur, *sending forward the cavalry, Caesar followed* (literally, *the cavalry being sent forward*).

398 Instead of a participle an adjective or noun may be used:

Caesare vīvō, *Caesar (being) alive, when Caesar was alive, while Caesar lived.*

Rōmulō rēge, *Romulus (being) king, when Romulus was king.*

In such instances the participle *being* is implied, for which there is no Latin form.

399 In translating into English, the Ablative Absolute is often best rendered by a clause with an active verb or participle. Thus **equitātū praemissō** may be translated *sending forward the cavalry, when he had sent forward the cavalry.*

The Ablative Absolute should always be translated so as to bring out the particular meaning intended. Thus:

datā facultāte	*if opportunity were given.*
sē invītō	*against his will.* / *without his consent.*
dīs invītīs	*though the gods are unwilling.* / *since the gods are unwilling.*

III. THE LOCATIVE ABLATIVE

400 This Ablative includes the Ablatives of Place and Time.

401 1. The Place Where is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition:

erat in Galliā ulteriōre ūna legiō, *there was one legion in farther Gaul.*

402 But the following are used without a preposition:

(1) Names of towns and little islands:

Carthāgine, *at Carthage*. **Athēnīs**, *at Athens*.

(2) Some expressions of Place, especially with **locus** or **tōtus**:

aliō locō, *elsewhere*. **tōtā urbe**, *in the whole city*. **novissimō agmine**, *in the rear-guard*.

(3) **forīs**, *outdoors*, **rūrī**, *in the country*, **terrā marīque**, *by land and sea*.

403 Here may be included the following Locative forms (**61, 69**):

(1) Names of towns and small islands; found in the singular of first and second declensions:

Rōmae, *at Rome*. **Ephesī**, *at Ephesus*.
Rhodī ego nōn fuī, *I was not at Rhodes*.

(2) **domī**, *at home*. **humī**, *on the ground*.
mīlitiae, *in war, abroad*. **vesperī**, *at evening*.
bellī, *in war*. **herī**, *yesterday*.

404 2. The Place From Which is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition:

Xerxēs ex Eurōpā in Asiam revertit, *Xerxes returned from Europe into Asia*.
imber dē caelō dēcidit, *a shower falls from the sky*.

405 But names of towns and small islands are used without a preposition:

Carthāgine profectus, *setting out from Carthage*.
Cyprō reversus, *returned from Cyprus*.

406 3. The Time At Which is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition:

prīmā lūce, *at dawn*.
adventū meō, *on my arrival*.
bellīs Pūnicīs, *at the time of the Punic wars*.
proximīs comitiīs, *at the last election*.

Sometimes **in** is used: **in tālī tempore**, *at such a time*.

407 4. The Time Within Which is expressed by the Ablative with or without a preposition:

quīnque annīs illōs librōs cōnfēcit, *he completed those books in five years.*
bis in diē, *twice a day.*

Some Ablatives of Time Within Which amount to expressions of Duration of Time (**324**):

eā tōtā nocte ierunt, *all that night they marched.*

III. THE USES OF ADJECTIVES

408 The Agreement of Adjectives has been explained in **293**, **294**, **295**.

409 Adjectives are used as Nouns,

1. Often in the Plural:

fortūna fortēs adjuvat, *fortune favors the brave.*
vae victīs, *woe to the vanquished!*
parva compōnere māgnīs, *to compare small (things) with great.*

2. Sometimes in the Singular:

sapiēns dominātur astrīs, *the wise (man) rules his stars.*
multum in parvō, *much in little.*
nihil novī, *nothing new.*

410 In the singular the noun is generally expressed when persons are meant:

homo doctus, *a scholar.* **mulier vidua**, *a widow.*
līber homo, *a gentleman.*

411 Some Adjectives have become Nouns:

amīcus, *friend.*	**librārius**, *bookseller.*
cōgnātus, *kinsman.*	**vīcīnus**, *neighbor.*

412 Some Adjectives are used like Adverbs:

laetus vēnī, *I came gladly.*
invītī discessimus, *we departed unwillingly.*

413 Ordinal Numerals are more common in Latin than in English:

annō mīllēsimō, *in the year 1000.*
quārtus annus est, *it is going on four years.*

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

414 The Comparative and Superlative include several shades of meaning:

1. Positive.	māgnus		*great*
2. Comparative.	mājor	*somewhat*	*great*
		rather	*great*
		more	*great, greater*
		too	*great*
3. Superlative.	māximus	*very*	*great*
		most	*great, greatest*
4. Superlative strengthened.	vel māximus	*very*	*greatest*
	quam māximus	*greatest possible*	

415 With a Comparative, the word compared is either connected by quam or, less often, is put in the Ablative (380, 381):

virtūs ūtilior est quam scientia, } *virtue is more useful*
virtūs scientiā ūtilior est, } *than knowledge.*

416 A few Adjectives of Place and Order, mostly Superlatives, are used with a partitive meaning.

They are prīmus, extrēmus; summus, medius, īnfimus (īmus):

prīmō vēre, *in early spring* (literally, *in first spring*).
extrēmā aestāte, *in late summer.*
summa arbor, *the top of the tree.*
in mediā urbe, *in the midst of the city.*

417 **prior, prīmus, postrēmus, ultimus,** sometimes have the force of an English clause:

prīmus vēnit, *he was-the-first to come* (*he came the first one*).

418 This use of **prīmus** must not be confused with the meaning of the adverbs **prīmum** and **prīmō**:

prīmum vēnit, *he came for the first time.*
prīmō mē nōn āgnōvit, *at first he did not know me.*

IV. THE USES OF PRONOUNS

PERSONAL

419 The Personal Pronoun (137) as Subject is usually not expressed, unless it is emphatic:

fēcī, *I did it.* **ego fēcī,** *it was I who did it.*

420 The Genitives **meī, tuī, nostrī, vestrī,** are usually Objective (351), but **nostrum** and **vestrum** are usually Genitives of the Whole (355):

memoria meī tua, *your remembrance of me.*
oblītus nostrī, *forgetful of us.*
nēmō nostrum, *not one of us.*

REFLEXIVE

421 The Reflexive **sē** (138) and the Possessive **suus** (140) are used to refer to the Subject.

1. They usually refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand:

gladiō sē dēfendit, *he defended himself with a sword.*
Brūtus amīcum suum occīdit, *Brutus slew his own friend.*
Helvētiōs in suōs fīnēs revertī jussit, *he ordered the Helvetians to return into their own territory.*

2. When in a subordinate clause (**287**) they sometimes refer to the Subject of the principal clause. This is regular in Indirect Discourse (**609**).

This happens when the subordinate clause is part of the thought of the speaker (or Subject) in the principal clause:

hīs Caesar mandat ut ad sē revertantur, *Caesar commands them to return to him.*

422 Sometimes two Reflexives in a subordinate infinitive clause refer one to the subject of the principal and one to the subject of the subordinate clause:

Ariovistus respondit nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse, *Ariovistus answered that no man had contended with him without his own destruction.*

Here **sēcum** refers to **Ariovistus**, the subject of **respondit** in the principal clause, and **suā** to **nēminem** the subject of the infinitive **contendisse** in the subordinate clause.

423 **suus**, especially when combined with **quisque**, is sometimes used to refer to some other word than the Subject:

Hannibalem suī cīvēs ē cīvitāte ējēcērunt, *his own fellow-citizens cast out Hannibal.*

jūs suum cuique tribuere, *to give every one his due.*

POSSESSIVE

424 The Possessive Pronoun (**139**) is usually omitted, unless it is emphatic:

patrem āmīsī, *I lost (my) father.*

But **suō locō dīcam,** *I shall state in the proper place (its own place).*

meā sententiā, *in my opinion.*

A word in apposition with a possessive pronoun is put in the Genitive. **ipse, sōlus, ūnus, omnis,** are most frequently used in this way:

meā ūnīus operā, *by my help alone.*

in tuā ipsīus epistolā, *in your own letter.*

SUBSTITUTES FOR RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS

425 Latin has no Reciprocal Pronoun for *each other, one another.* The following expressions are to be used instead:

1. **inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē:**

obsidēs inter sē dare, *to give each other hostages (among themselves).*
inter nōs conjūnctī sumus, *we are attached to each other.*

2. **alter, alius** or **neuter** repeated in a different case:

alter alterum amat, *the one loves the other.*
alius aliī subsidium fert, *they give help to one another.*

3. A noun repeated in a different case:

apēs apium sunt simillimae, *bees are very like each other.*

DEMONSTRATIVE

426 In addition to the meanings of **hīc, iste, ille,** already explained (**141**), the following should be noticed:

1. **hīc** refers to what is nearest, **ille** to what is more remote:

hīc diēs, *to-day.* **ille sōl,** *yonder sun.*
haec nox, *last night* (if spoken in the morning).

Both are often translated by *as follows:*

haec dīxit, *he spoke as follows.*

2. **hīc** and **ille** in contrast often mean *this . . . that, the former . . . the latter:*

hōc idem est quod illud, *this is the same as that.*
haec in nostrā, illa in deōrum manū sunt, *the former is in our hand, the latter in the hand of the gods.*

3. **ille** often means *well-known, famous:*

ille Dēmosthenēs, *the famous Demosthenes.*
illud Platōnis, *that noted (saying) of Plato.*

4. **iste** often indicates contempt:

ista impudentia, *such impudence!*

5. The missing pronoun of the third person is supplied by **ille** or **is** (**137**, **144**). **is** also serves as the regular antecedent of the relative pronoun (**299**):

is fēcit, *he did it.*
id quod praedīxī, ēvēnit, *that, which I foretold, has happened.*

427 **īdem**, *the same* (**145**), may sometimes be translated by *also, likewise*:

quidquid honestum, idem ūtile, *whatever (is) honorable (is) also expedient.*

INTENSIVE

428 The Intensive **ipse**, *self* (**146**), emphasizes the word it modifies:

ipse dīxit, (*he*) *himself said.*
nōsce tē ipsum, *know thyself.*
sapientia ipsa bona, *wisdom in itself (is) good.*
hōc ipsum, *this very thing.*
decem diēs ipsī, *just ten days.*
ipse aderat, *he was present in person.*

RELATIVE

429 The rules for the Relative **quī**, *who*, have been given in **299–304**.

INDEFINITE

430 For a list of Indefinite Pronouns see **149**.

431 **quis, aliquis, quispiam,** and **quīdam** are indefinite in different degrees:

sī quis dīxerit, *should any one say.* Most indefinite.
aliquis dīxerit, **dīxerit quispiam**, } *some one may say.* Less indefinite.
scrīptor quīdam narrat, *a certain writer says.* Least indefinite.

432 **quisquam** and the pronominal adjective **ūllus** mean *any one at all.* They are used mostly in negative, interrogative and conditional sentences, and after comparatives:

neque mē quisquam āgnōvit, *and not a soul recognized me.*
an quisquam Croesō dīvitior fuit, *was (ever) any one richer than Croesus?*
sī quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit, *he was wise, if any one (ever was).*
taetrior tyrannus quam quisquam superiōrum, *a viler tyrant than any of his predecessors.*
hostem esse in Syriā negant ūllum, *they say that there is not an enemy in Syria.*

433 **quisque,** *each one,* is used particularly

1. In relative and demonstrative sentences:

quod cuique obtigit, id quisque teneat, *what each one has got, that let him keep.*
mēns cūjusque, is est quisque, *each one's mind is each one's self.*

2. With the reflexives **sē** and **suus** (**421**):

sē quisque dīligit, *each one loves himself.*

3. Following superlatives and **ūnus**:

optimus quisque, *all the best (each best one).*
ūnus quisque vestrum, *every one of you.*

4. Following ordinal numerals:

tertiō quōque annō, *every third year.*

434 The negative of **quisquam** is **nēmō,** *nobody,* and of **ūllus** is **nūllus,** *no, none.* **nēmō** is always used as a noun and **nūllus** generally as an adjective:

nēminem videō, *I see nobody.*
nūlla causa, *no reason.*

435 The genitive and ablative of **nēmō** are regularly supplied by **nūllīus** and **nūllō**.

nēminem laesit : nūllīus aurēs violāvit, *he has injured nobody ; he has shocked no one's ears.*

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

436 The principal Pronominal Adjectives (151) are

alius, alter,	**ūllus, nūllus,**
uter, neuter,	**cēterī, reliquī,**
uterque.	

437 **alius**, *another*, and **alter**, *the other*, have various uses.

1. Singly :

īdem et alius, *the same and (yet) another.*
alter Nerō, *a second Nero.*
claudus alterō pede, *lame in one foot.*

2. In Pairs, meaning *each other*, *one . . . another*, *some . . . others* :

alter alterum amat, *each loves the other* (Reciprocal use, 425).
aliī aliō modō vīvunt, *some live one way, some another.*
aliī resistunt, fugiunt aliī, *some resist, others flee.*

438 Notice the following plurals :

aliī, *others* **cēterī**, *all the others* **reliquī**, *the rest, the remaining (ones)*

439 Also these uses :

uterque, *each (of two)* **utrīque**, *both* **ambō**, *both together*

V. THE USES OF THE VERB

The Finite Verb

440 The various uses of Voice, Mood, Tense, Person, and Number make up the Syntax of the Finite Verb (**156**).

441 In finding the place where any form of the finite verb occurs, pick out (1) the Tense first, then (2) the Mood and (3) Voice, and after that (4) the Person and (5) Number.

		1. Tense	2. Mood	3. Voice	4. Person	5. Number
amat, *he loves*	is	Present	Indicative	Active	Third	Singular
amēmus, *let us love*	is	Present	Subjunctive	Active	First	Plural

I. VOICE, PERSON, NUMBER

442 The principal uses of Voice (**158**), Person (**163**), and Number (**162**) have been explained.

VOICE

In addition, the following special uses of Voice should be noticed :

1. The Active Voice of transitive verbs is sometimes used

Absolutely—alone, with no object implied : **amat**, *he is in love*, **audiō**, *I am listening*.

Reflexively—with or without a reflexive pronoun : **terra mōvit (sē)**, *the earth quaked* (*moved itself*).

Both these uses may be considered Intransitive.

2. The Active Voice of intransitive verbs is sometimes used transitively.

Thus **rīdeō**, *I laugh*, is usually intransitive, but is transitive in **quid rīdēs**, *what are you laughing at?*

3. The Passive Voice sometimes has a reflexive meaning:

ACTIVE	REFLEXIVE	PASSIVE
lavō, *I wash*	**lavor**, *I bathe* (*wash myself*)	**lavor**, *I am washed*

4. Sometimes intransitive verbs have a few Passive forms. These are always used with an impersonal meaning (**233**. 3): **pūgnātum est**, *there was fighting* (literally, *it was fought*).

II. TENSE

443 Every Tense shows two things:

First, the Progress of the action, either

1. Defined as Going On or Completed, or
2. Undefined.

Second, the Time of the action, as Past, Present, or Future.

Thus in the Imperfect Tense **dīcēbam**, *I was saying*, the action of the verb is Defined as Going On in Past Time.

In the Present Tense **dīcō**, *I am saying*, the action of the verb is Defined as Going On in Present Time, but whenever **dīcō** means simply *I say*, the action of the verb is Undefined in Present Time.

PRINCIPAL AND HISTORICAL TENSES

444 The Principal Tenses include the Present, Present Perfect (**160**), Future, and Future Perfect.

The Historical Tenses include the Imperfect, Historical Perfect (**160**), and Pluperfect.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

Present Indicative

445 The Present Indicative states the action of the verb as *going on* or as *undefined* in *present time.*

Going On: **dīcō**, *I am saying* **quid facis?** *what are you doing?*

Undefined: **dīcō**, *I say* **bene est**, *it is well.*

446 It is also used

1. For what is generally true or customary:

īra furor brevis est, *anger is a brief madness.*
Cicerōnis ōrātiōnēs in scholīs leguntur, *Cicero's orations are read in the schools.*

2. For attempted action:

perīculum vītant, *they are trying to avoid* (literally, *are avoiding*) *danger.*

3. In citing the statements or opinions of writers (Literary Present):

Platō disputat animam esse immortālem, *Plato argues the soul is immortal.*

447 4. To express past or future time as viewed from the present.

(1) Past action in a lively or present manner (Historical Present):

mīlitēs incēdere jubet, *he ordered* (literally, *orders*) *the soldiers to advance.*

Here belongs the use of **dum**, *while*, with the Present Tense:

dum haec geruntur, *while these things were* (literally, *are*) *being attended to.*

(2) Past action continued into the present.

This use occurs in connection with the adverbs **jam**, *now (at last)*, **jam diū**, *now for a long time*, **tam diū**, *so long*, **jam prīdem**, *now long since*, and **jam dūdum**, *now at length* :

jam videō, *now (at last) I see.*
tam diū Germānia vincitur, *so long is Germany in being conquered.*

(3) Future action in advance : **sī vīvō**, *if I live.*

Imperfect Indicative

448 The Imperfect Indicative states the action of the verb as *going on* in *past time* :

librum legēbam, *I was reading a book.*
ut herī dīcēbam, *as I was saying yesterday.*

449 It is also used

1. For repeated or customary action :

cōnsulēs quotannis creābantur, *the consuls were chosen yearly.*

2. For action attempted or begun :

eum in exsilium ējiciēbam, *I was trying to drive him into exile.*

3. Instead of the Present Tense in letters (Epistolary Imperfect) :

cum haec scrībēbam, in exspectātiōne erant omnia, *as I write this, everything looks hopeful.* See **456**, **458**.

4. For earlier past action continued in the more recent past.

This use occurs with **jam**, **jam diū**, and similar adverbs, as it does in the Present Tense (**447**) :

jam dūdum flēbam, *long had I been weeping.*

5. In descriptions :

oppidum Alesia erat in colle summō, *the town (of) Alesia was on the top of a hill.*

Future Indicative

450 The Future Indicative states the action of the verb as *going on* or as *undefined* in *future time*:

Going on: **scrībam**, *I shall be writing.*
Undefined: **scrībam**, *I shall write.*

451 It is sometimes used with an imperative meaning:

tū nihil dīcēs, *you will say nothing.*

Perfect Indicative

452 The Perfect Indicative has two separate uses:

1. Present Perfect: **amāvī**, *I have loved.*
2. Historical Perfect: **amāvī**, *I loved.*

1. Present Perfect

453 The Present Perfect states the action of the verb as *completed* at the *present time*. It is translated with *have*:

quod scrīpsī, scrīpsī, *what I have written, I have written.*

2. Historical Perfect

454 The Historical Perfect states the action of the verb as *undefined* in *past time*:

vēnī, vīdī, vīcī, *I came and saw and overcame.*

455 The Perfect of some inceptive (**214**) and defective verbs (**230**) is translated by the Present Tense:

nōvī, *I know.* **meminī**, *I remember.*

The Pluperfect and Future Perfect of these verbs are to be translated in a simple past and future sense:

nōveram, *I knew.* **nōverō**, *I shall know.*

456 In letters (**449**. 3, **458**) the Perfect is sometimes used instead of the Present Tense (Epistolary Perfect):

tertiam ad tē hanc epistulam scrīpsī, *this (is) the third letter I'm writing you.*

Pluperfect Indicative

457 The Pluperfect Indicative states the action of the verb as *completed* in *past time*:

fuerat inimīcus, *he had been (my) enemy.*

458 In letters (**449**. 3, **456**) the Pluperfect is sometimes used instead of the Present Perfect (Epistolary Pluperfect):

ad tuās omnēs epistulās rescrīpseram, *I have replied to all your letters.*

Future Perfect Indicative

459 The Future Perfect Indicative states the action of the verb as *completed* in *future time*:

dīcam tibi, cum ipse audīverō, *I'll tell you, when I hear myself* (literally, *shall have heard*).

460 *Table showing the Chief Uses of Tenses of the Indicative*

Progress of Action		Time of Action		
		Present	Past	Future
I. Defined	Going on	PRESENT **dīcō** *I am saying*	IMPERFECT **dīcēbam** *I was saying*	FUTURE **dīcam** *I shall be saying*
	Completed	PRESENT PERF. **dīxī** *I have said*	PLUPERFECT **dīxeram** *I had said*	FUTURE PERFECT **dīxerō** *I shall have said*
II. Undefined		PRESENT **dīcō** *I say*	HISTORICAL PERF. **dīxī** *I said*	FUTURE **dīcam** *I shall say*

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

I. IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

461 In independent sentences and principal clauses (287) the four tenses of the Subjunctive (160) are usually like the same tenses of the Indicative. But notice that

1. The Present Subjunctive regularly has a future meaning:

maneat, *may he stay, let him stay.*

2. The Imperfect Subjunctive sometimes has a present meaning:

utinam nē haec scrīberem, *would I were not writing this!*

3. The Perfect Subjunctive sometimes has a future meaning:

nē mortem timueris, *do not fear death.*

II. IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

462 In a subordinate clause (287) the tense of the Subjunctive is said to follow the tense of the principal clause. This is called the Sequence of Tenses. The general rule for the Sequence of Tenses is:

Principal Tenses follow Principal;
Historical Tenses follow Historical.

463 TABLE SHOWING THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

1. *Principal Tenses following Principal*

PRIN. CLAUSE	SUB. CLAUSE		
dīcō **dīcam** **dīxī** **dīxerō**	**quid sentiam** or **quid sēnserim**	*I say* *I shall say* *I have said* *I shall have said*	*what I think* or *what I have thought*

2. *Historical Tenses following Historical*

dīcēbam **dīxī** **dīxeram**	**quid sentīrem** or **quid sēnsissem**	*I was saying* *I said* *I had said*	*what I thought* or *what I had thought*

464 Following a Principal Tense:

1. The present Subjunctive expresses *the same time* as that of the principal clause:

dīcō quid sentiam, *I say* (now) *what I think* (now).
dīcam quid sentiam, *I shall say* (then) *what I think* (then).

2. The Perfect Subjunctive expresses *time earlier than* that of the principal clause:

dīcam quid sēnserim, *I shall say* (then) *what I thought* (before that time).

465 Following a Historical Tense:

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive expresses *the same time* as that of the principal clause:

dīcēbam quid sentīrem, *I was saying* (then) *what I was thinking* (then).

2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive expresses *time earlier than* that of the principal clause:

dīcēbam quid sēnsissem, *I was saying* (then) *what I had thought* (before that time).

Apparent Variations in the Sequence of Tenses

466 These variations occur mostly because of (1) the frequent historical use of the Perfect, and (2) the construction of certain Conditional Sentences (471).

467 1. The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive commonly follow the Perfect Indicative, since it is generally used as a historical tense—often in instances where it may be translated with *have*. This is regular in Clauses of Purpose (506):

convocāvī vōs ut pauca dīcerem, *I have called you together that I might say a few (words).*

468 2. The Perfect Subjunctive, although it follows a principal tense, usually refers to past action:

dīcam quid sēnserim, *I shall say what I thought.*

469 3. The Perfect Subjunctive often (and the Present Subjunctive rarely) follows a historical tense in Clauses of Result (519):

ita quiēvit ut eō tempore omnī Neāpolī fuerit, *he kept so quiet that he stayed all that time at Naples.*

Verrēs Siciliam ita perdidit ut ea restituī nōn possit, *Verres so ruined Sicily that it cannot be restored.*

470 4. The Historical Present (447) usually behaves as a historical, but sometimes as a principal tense:

ut jānuam clauderent, imperat, *he ordered (them) to shut the door.*

hortātur ut arma capiant, *he exhorted (them) to take up arms.*

471 5. Conditional Sentences *contrary to fact* (557) are not governed by the general rule for the Sequence of Tenses (462):

honestum tāle est ut, vel sī īgnōrārent id hominēs, tamen laudābile esset, *virtue is such (a thing) that, even if men were ignorant of it, it would still be glorious.*

Here the Conditional Sentence *contrary to fact* is

sī īgnōrārent id hominēs, tamen laudābile esset.

The verbs **īgnōrārent** and **esset** are in the Imperfect Subjunctive according to the rules for Conditional Sentences (**557**). They stay in the Imperfect Subjunctive, although they are in a subordinate clause following a principal clause whose verb (**est**) is in a principal tense.

Future Time in Subordinate Subjunctive Clauses

472 As the Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, the place of these missing tenses is filled by the existing subjunctive tenses—*especially after principal clauses which suggest future time.*

In this construction either the regular or the periphrastic form (**188**) may be used. The periphrastic form is to be preferred when future time is to be expressed very definitely.

In Regular Form

To fill the place of the missing Future, the Present is used after principal tenses and the Imperfect after historical tenses:

quaerō quid faciās, *I ask what you will do.*
quaesīvī quid facerēs, *I asked what you would do.*

To fill the place of the missing Future Perfect, the Perfect is used after principal tenses and the Pluperfect after historical tenses:

quaerō quid fēceris, *I ask what you will have done.*
quaesīvī quid fēcissēs, *I asked what you would have done.*

In Periphrastic Form

quaerō quid factūrus sīs, *I ask what you are going-to-do.*
quaesīvī quid factūrus essēs, *I asked what you were going-to-do.*

TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE

473 As all commands and requests are used of future acts, the two tenses of the Imperative always have a future meaning.

When used together, the Present refers to an imminent and the Future to a later future:

crēde et crēditō, *believe this and then believe* (*if you can*).

474 Generally the Present Imperative is used:

valē, *fare* (*thee*) *well.* **valēte**, *fare* (*ye*) *well.*
dīvide et imperā, *divide and conquer.*
cavē canem, *look out for the dog.*

475 The Future Imperative is found—

1. In sentences stating an expected result or conclusion:

sī iste ībit, ītō, *if that* (*fellow*) *goes, you shall go* (*too*).
ubi nihil erit quod scrībās, id ipsum scrībitō, *when there is nothing for you to write,* (*then*) *you'll write just that.*

2. In general formal statements, such as laws, wills, rules, and maxims:

hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelītō, *thou shalt not bury a dead man within the city.*
salūs populī suprēma lēx estō, *let the welfare of the people be the highest law.*
īgnōscitō saepe alterī, numquam tibi, *forgive your brother often, yourself never.*

III. MOOD

476 Mood (**159**) is the manner of stating the action of the Verb. The action may be stated—

1. As Really Happening. The Mood of Fact (Indicative).
2. As Thought Of. The Mood of Will, Desire, Possibility (Subjunctive).
3. As Demanded. The Mood of Command (Imperative).

A. IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

INDICATIVE MOOD

477 The Indicative (159) always expresses the action of the verb as a *fact.*

The fact may be expressed in three ways:

Asserted: **is mē quaerit,** *he seeks me.*
Asked: **quis mē quaerit,** *who seeks me?*
Supposed: **sī quis mē quaerit,** *if any one seeks me.*

478 The Indicative is used mostly in independent sentences or principal clauses. But it also occurs in subordinate clauses *which express facts*:

nōn is sum quī fuī, *I'm not the man I was.*
quod scrīpsī, scrīpsī, *what I have written, I have written.*

479 The English *ought, might* (in sense of *can* or *could*), and *it would be* usually become Indicatives with the Present Infinitive:

dēbeō tacēre, *I ought to keep silent.*
dēbēbam tacēre, *I ought to have kept silent.*
possum dīcere, *I might say.*
potuī dīcere, *I might have said.*
difficile erat dīcere, *it would be hard to say.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

480 The Subjunctive (159) in independent sentences or principal clauses expresses the action of the verb, not as a fact, but *as thought of* in one of three ways:

1. As Willed: Volitive Subjunctive.
2. As Desired: Optative Subjunctive.
3. As Possible: Conditional Subjunctive.

I. Volitive Subjunctive

[Subjunctive of Will]

481 The Volitive Subjunctive states the action as *willed*. It is used

1. In commanding: Jussive Subjunctive.
2. In conceding: Concessive Subjunctive.

482 1. Jussive Subjunctive, used in *commanding*, like the Imperative Mood (495):

First Person—only in Plural of Present Tense:

vīvāmus atque amēmus, *let us live and love.*

This is the so-called Hortatory Subjunctive.

Second and Third Persons—generally in Present Tense (492):

cautus sīs, *you must be careful.*

suum quisque nōscat ingenium, *let each learn his own disposition.*

nōmina dēclīnāre puerī sciant, *let boys know (how) to decline nouns.*

483 2. Concessive Subjunctive, used in *conceding*:

The tenses used are the Present and Perfect:

nē sit summum malum dolor: malum certē est, (*grant*) *pain is not the worst evil: an evil it surely is.*

fruātur sānē hōc sōlātiō, *that comfort, of course, he may take.*

II. Optative Subjunctive

[Subjunctive of Desire]

484 The Optative Subjunctive states the action as a *wish* or *desire*.

The tenses used are the Present, Imperfect, and Pluperfect.

The Present states the wish as *possible*:

dī istaec prohibeant, *may the gods avert that!*
utinam illum diem videam, *may I see that day!*

The Imperfect states the wish as *unfulfilled in present time*:

utinam Cyrus vīveret, *O that Cyrus were alive!*

The Pluperfect states the wish as *unfulfilled in past time*:

utinam tacuissem, *O that I had kept still!*

NOTE: **utinam,** *O that* or *would that*, is often used with the Present, regularly with the Imperfect and Pluperfect, in the optative subjunctive.

III. Conditional (in a few cases Potential) Subjunctive

[Subjunctive of Possibility]

485 This Subjunctive includes the

1. Potential Subjunctive, which states the action as that which *can* be.

This use is not common. The tense is the Present or the Perfect with a present meaning:

dīcat or **dīxerit aliquis,** *some one may say.*

frangās, potius quam corrigās, quae in prāvum indūruērunt, *you can break, easier than mend, what has hardened into evil.*

The Potential Subjunctive suggests possibility, but possibility of only one kind (what *can* be), and so it easily disappears in the general

486 2. Conditional Subjunctive, which states the action of the verb as *possible in any way*—that is, (1) *possible* (2) *on any condition.*

487 (1) The possible action is always stated in the principal clause:

hōc dīxissem, *I should have said so and so.*

488 (2) The condition of its being possible may be

1. Omitted, but understood:

hōc dīxissem, *I should have said so and so.*

Here some such condition, as **sī adfuissem,** *if I had been there*, or **sī dīxissem,** *if I had spoken*, is understood, though not stated.

2. Suggested in the principal clause:

pāce tuā dīxerim, *by your leave I would say.*

Here the condition is suggested in **pāce tuā**, meaning *if I have your leave.*

3. Expressed by a subordinate clause:

sī adesset, bene esset, *if he were here, it would be well.*

Here the condition is expressed by the subordinate clause **sī adesset**. This is in the regular form of the Conditional Sentence (**557**).

489 The Conditional Subjunctive in a leading clause is therefore nothing but the *conclusion* of a Conditional Sentence (**551**), in which the *condition* is either omitted, suggested, or expressed.

490 The Subjunctive used in polite or cautious statements may be considered a Conditional Subjunctive. This is common with **velim, nōlim, mālim** (227):

pāce tuā dīxerim, *by your leave, I would say.*
velim mihi īgnōscās, *I wish you would forgive me.*
vellem mē ad cēnam invītāvissēs, *I wish you had asked me to dinner.*
vix ausim dīcere, *I hardly dare say.*

NEGATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE SENTENCES

491 The negative word used

I. With the Volitive and Optative Subjunctives is **nē**:

Volitive:

nē dēspērēmus, *let us not despair* (Hortatory).
nē audeant, *let them not dare* (Jussive).
nē sit summum malum, (*grant*) *it is not the worst evil* (Concessive).

Optative:

utinam nātus nē essem, *would I had not been born!*

II. With the Conditional Subjunctive is **nōn**:

nōn facile dīxerim, *I could not easily say.*

The Negative Jussive Subjunctive

492 A negative command or *prohibition* in the Second Person of the Subjunctive occurs chiefly in poetry. The Present or (oftener) the Perfect is used:

nē mē attigās, *don't touch me.*
tū nē fēceris, *don't you do (it).*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RHETORICAL QUESTIONS (283)

493 The Subjunctive is found in questions of doubt, disbelief, and disdain. The negative is **nōn**.

Doubt:

quid agam, *what am I to do?*
quid agerem, *what was I to do?*

Disbelief:

quis putet, *who would suppose?*
cūr nōn liceat, *why should it not be allowed?*

Disdain—sometimes introduced by **ut** or **utī**:

tē ut ūlla rēs frangat, *anything break you down?*

SUBJUNCTIVE WITH INDEFINITE SECOND PERSON

494 The Second Person Singular of the Subjunctive is sometimes used with an indefinite meaning. Here *you* has the force of *one*:

memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās, *the memory weakens, unless one exercises it.*
vidērēs, *one could see.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

495 The Imperative (159) states the action of the verb as a *command* or *request.*

Any kind of request may be thus expressed:

An Order:	**ī curre, puer,**	*go, boy! run along!*
Exhortation:	**ōrā et labōrā,**	*work and pray.*
Prayer:	**audī Jūpiter,**	*hear thou, O Jove!*
Comic Request:	**abī, lūdis mē,**	*go away! you're fooling me.*

496 Negative commands, or *prohibitions* (see **492**), may be expressed by:

1. **nōlī** or **nōlīte** with the Infinitive:

nōlī timēre, *fear not.*

2. **nē** with Imperative (in poetry):

nē cēde malīs, *yield not to the ills (of life).*

3. Imperatives such as **cavē**, *beware*, **fac** or **vidē**, *see to it*, followed by **nē** with the Subjunctive:

cavē nē eās, *look out, don't go.*
fac nē aliud quid cūrēs, *see you attend to nothing else.*

B. IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

497 The Moods in subordinate clauses are the Indicative and Subjunctive. The Indicative occurs only in clauses of *fact* (**478**). Otherwise the Subjunctive is always used.

NOTE: This is the principal use of the Subjunctive, as the name indicates (**sub-jūnctus**, *sub-joined, dependent*). Its meaning in subordinate clauses is the same as in principal clauses, or is derived from that meaning.

General Explanation of Subordinate Clauses

It is very important to notice at the outset that every subordinate clause, taken as a whole, has its *use*, its *form*, and its *meaning*.

1. The *use* is its construction as a part of the sentence in which it stands.

Thus in **rogō ut veniās**, *I ask that you come*, **ut veniās** is *used* like a Noun (= Substantive Clause) as the Object of **rogō**.

2. The *form* is the manner of joining the subordinate to the principal clause. This is shown by its first or introducing word.

Thus **ut veniās** in *form* is a Conjunctional Clause, because the conjunction **ut** introduces it—serving as a cue or hint to suggest the coming clause.

3. The *meaning* is the thought expressed.

Thus **ut veniās** in *meaning* expresses the Purpose of the principal clause (**rogō**).

REMARK: As the *meanings* of subordinate clauses are best learned under the *forms* in which they occur, they are treated in this grammar under the three general forms of Conjunctional, Relative, and Interrogative clauses.

The subordinate clause **ut veniās**, which may serve as an example for all others, is therefore explained by saying it is (1) in *use* a Substantive Clause, the Object of **rogō**, (2) in *form* a Conjunctional Clause introduced by **ut**, and (3) in *meaning* an expression of the Purpose of **rogō**. Or, more briefly, it is a Substantive Clause of Purpose, the Object of **rogō**. And as all subordinate clauses, except clauses of *fact* (**497**), have the verb in the Subjunctive, the verb **veniās** in this clause is, of course, in the Subjunctive.

I. USES OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

498 A subordinate clause (**287**), taken as a whole, is construed like a single word. It is used

1. As a Noun (Substantive Clause)—usually as the Subject or Object of the verb in the principal clause:

saepe fit ut hominēs fallantur, *it often happens that men are deceived.*

Here the Substantive Clause **ut hominēs fallantur** is the Subject of **fit**.

imperō tibi ut abeās, *I order you to depart.*

Here the Substantive Clause **ut abeās** is the Object of **imperō**.

499 Substantive Clauses are also used as Appositives (**291**), and occasionally in other constructions:

hōc praestāmus ferīs, quod colloquimur inter nōs, *we are better than the beasts in this, that we can talk with each other* (Appositive).

ōrō tē, virum tē praebeās, *I pray you, show yourself a man* (Accusative of Thing, **505**).

500 2. As an Adjective (Attributive Clause):

pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, jubet rescindī, *he orders the bridge, which was near Geneva, to be cut down.*

Here the Clause **quī erat ad Genāvam** acts as an Adjective and describes the noun **pontem**.

501 3. As an Adverb (Adverbial Clause):

cum sīs mortālis, mortālia cūrēs, *since you are mortal, care for mortal (things).*

Here the Clause **cum sīs mortālis** acts as an Adverb of Cause and modifies the verb **cūrēs**.

II. FORMS OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

502 Subordinate clauses are joined to the principal clause by an introducing word. The introducing word is either a Conjunction, a Relative, or an Interrogative:

1. Conjunction: **rogō ut veniās**, *I ask that you come.*
2. Relative: **bis dat, quī cito dat**, *who gives quickly, gives twice.*
3. Interrogative: **quaerō quis dederit**, *I ask who has given (it).*

I. CONJUNCTIONAL CLAUSES

503 Conjunctional clauses are introduced by the Subordinate Conjunctions (**254–261**).

Transition to the Conjunctional Clause

504 Subordinate clauses without a conjunction often occur after verbs expressing a Wish, Command, or Need:

1. **velim, nōlim, mālim; vellem, nōllem, māllem.**
2. The Imperatives **fac** and **cavē**.
3. **licet, oportet, necesse est.**
4. Sometimes after **volō, nōlō, mālō** and verbs of Asking or Commanding.

velim dīcās, *I wish you would tell.*
fac mē amēs, *see (that) you love me.*
condemnētur necesse est, *be condemned he must.*
rogō hōc, dīcet, *(if) I ask this, he will say.*
ōrō tē, virum tē praebeās, *I pray you, show yourself a man.*

505 Such sentences were formed by huddling together two independent sentences without change of form. Thus **ōrō tē virum tē praebeās** easily falls apart into the two sentences **ōrō tē,** *I pray you*, and **virum tē praebeās,** *show yourself a man* (**482**). But when the two are put together, **ōrō** becomes the leading verb which governs **tē** as Accusative of the Person and the subordinate Substantive Clause (**498**) **virum tē praebeās** like an Accusative of the Thing (**318**).

1. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

506 Clauses of Purpose are introduced by **ut (utī)** or **quō**, *that*, or by **nē** or **quōminus**, *that not*, and always take the Subjunctive.

imperō tibi ut abeās, *I order you to depart (that you depart).*
praesidia dispōnit quō facilius hostēs prohibeantur, *he stations guards that the enemy may be more easily repelled.*
ōrāvit nē ēnūntiāret, *he begged that he would not tell.*
quid obstat quōminus sit beātus, *what is-to-keep (him) from being happy?*

507 The usual introducing word is **ut** or (in negative clauses) **nē**. **quō** (= **ut eō**, *that thereby*) is an Ablative of Means, and is regularly used when the clause contains a Comparative word or suggestion. **quōminus** (*that thereby . . . not*) is the negative of **quō**. It is used after verbs of Hindering, and may be translated *from*.

nēve (**neu**), rarely **neque**, is used to express *and (that) not*, *nor (that)*:

nēve hīs bellum īnferret, *nor should he wage war on them.*

508 **ut nē** sometimes occurs as a strengthened form instead of **nē**:

ut nē quid agāmus, *that we may not do anything.*

ut nōn occurs only when the **nōn** belongs to some one word and not to the whole clause.

ut nōn ējectus sed invītātus īvisse vidēāris, *that you may seem to have departed, not (as one) expelled, but invited.*

This rhetorical use must not be confused with the use of **ut nōn** in introducing Clauses of Result (**519**).

509 Clauses of Purpose are either Substantive or Adverbial.

510 I. Substantive clauses of Purpose fill out or complete what is implied in the leading verb.

Such clauses are used chiefly as Object of the leading verb:

suīs, ut idem faciant, imperat. *he orders his (men) to do the same thing.*

Here **ut idem faciant** is a Substantive Clause of Purpose, used as the Object of **imperat**.

511 Substantive clauses of Purpose occur after verbs in which the action looks toward the future—that is, verbs of Will or Aim.

512 1. Verbs of Asking, Commanding, Warning, Persuading, Allowing:

Ubiī ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, *the Ubii kept asking that he would bring them help.*

mīlitēs cohortātus est ut impetum sustinērent, *he exhorted his soldiers to withstand the attack.*

concēdō ut abeās, *I allow you to go.*

513 2. Verbs of Resolving and Striving:

dēcrēvit senātus ut cōnsulēs vidērent, *the Senate decreed that the consuls should see to it.*

ēnītī dēbēs ut vincās, *you must strive to conquer.*

cūrā ut quam prīmum intellegam, *take care that I learn as soon as possible.*

514 3. Verbs of Hindering; used with **quōminus** or **nē**:

aetās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendī studia teneāmus, *age does not hinder us from following the pursuits of agriculture.*

impedior nē plūra dīcam, *I am prevented from saying more.*

515 4. Verbs of Wishing:

optāvit Phaëthōn ut in currum patris tollerētur, *Phaëthon desired to be taken up into his father's chariot.*

516 5. Verbs of Fearing.

Notice that with these verbs **ut** is translated by *that not* and **nē** by *that:*

vereor ut veniat, *I fear that he will not come = I am fearful: (O) that he may come.* [Here the coming is not expected.]

vereor nē veniat, *I fear that he will come = I am fearful: may he not come.* [Here the coming is expected.]

517 II. Adverbial Clauses of Purpose supplement the meaning of the leading verb, and merely state the purpose of the action:

edō ut vīvam, *I eat to live (that I may live).*

Here **ut vīvam** states the purpose of **edō** and modifies it like an Adverb of Cause (*for that I would live*).

vēnī ut vidērem, *I came to see.*
ut amēris, amābilis estō, *that you may be loved, be lovable.*
gallīnae pennīs fovent pullōs, nē frīgore laedantur, *hens shelter (their) chickens with (their) wings, lest they be hurt by the cold.*

518 The purpose is often suggested by some Demonstrative expression in the principal clause; such as **idcircō, ideō, propterea**, *on that account, therefore*, **eō, eā mente, eō cōnsiliō**, *with that intent, for this reason*:

litterās ad tē eō mīsī, ut rescrīberēs, *I sent you a letter for this reason—that you might answer it.*

2. CLAUSES OF RESULT

519 Clauses of Result are introduced by **ut**, (*so*) *that*, or by **ut nōn**, (*so*) *that not*, and always take the Subjunctive:

sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant, *the sun makes all things flourish* (literally, *so that all things flourish*).
mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent, *a mountain hung over, so that a very few could block (the way).*

520 Clauses of Result are either Substantive or Adverbial.

521 I. Substantive Clauses of Result fill out or complete what is implied in the leading verb.

Such clauses are used chiefly as Subject or Object, and sometimes as an Appositive.

They occur after

522 1. Verbs of Accomplishing:

sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant, *the sun makes all things flourish.*

523 2. Impersonal Verbs of Happening, Following, Remaining:

saepe fit ut hominēs fallantur, *it often happens that men are mistaken.*

sī vērum nōn est, sequitur ut falsum sit, *if it is not true, it follows that it is false.*

restat ut dīcam, *it remains for me to say.*

524 3. Some words of Law and Custom:

mōs Rōmānōrum erat ut bīnōs habērent cōnsulēs, *it was a custom of the Romans to have two consuls (at a time).*

525 4. A Comparative with **quam**:

vīvēbat lautius quam ut invidiam effugeret, *he lived too lavishly to escape envy.*

526 The Result is often suggested by a neuter demonstrative in the leading clause:

id facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant, *they try to accomplish this, (namely) to move out of their territory.*

sōlī hōc contingit sapientī, ut nihil invītus faciat, *to do nothing against one's own will,—this belongs to the wise alone.*

527 II. Adverbial Clauses of Result supplement the meaning of the leading verb, and merely state the result of the action.

mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent, *a mountain hung over, so that a very few could block the way.*

528 The Result is often suggested by some correlative to **ut**, especially by **tālis, tantus, ējus modī, ita, sīc, tantopere, adeō**, or by the demonstratives **hīc, is, īdem, ille**, used in the sense of **tālis** or **tantus**:

tantōs sibi spīritūs sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur, *he had put on such airs, that he seemed unendurable.*

ita vīxī, ut nōn frūstrā mē nātum exīstimem, *I have so lived that I do not think I was born in vain.*

eā celeritāte iērunt, ut hostēs impetum sustinēre nōn possent, *they advanced with such swiftness that the foe could not withstand the attack.*

3. CLAUSES OF TIME

529 Clauses of Time are Adverbial, and take the Indicative or Subjunctive. The negative is **nōn**. They are introduced as follows:

530 1. By **postquam, posteāquam**, *after*, **ubi, ut**, *when*, **cum prīmum, ubi prīmum, simul, simul ac (simul atque)**, *as soon as*.

Here the time of the leading verb is *later* than that of the subordinate clause.

531 These clauses regularly refer to a single past action, and take the Perfect Indicative:

postquam hostēs fugāvit, flūmen Axonam exercitum trānsdūxit, *after he routed the foe, he led (his) army across the river Axona.*

quī ut perōrāvit, surrēxit Clōdius, *when he finished speaking, up rose Clodius.*

532 But the Pluperfect Indicative is used—

1. To express past time with greater exactness.

nōnō annō postquam vēnerat, *in the ninth year after he came.*

2. To express repeated action, with **ubi, ut, simul atque**:

ubi nostrōs ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, adoriēbantur, *when(ever) they noticed our (soldiers) disembarking, they attacked (them).*

533 2. By **dum, dōnec, quoad**, *while, as long as*.

Here the time of the leading verb is the *same* as that of the subordinate clause.

These clauses usually take the Indicative, but clauses of *expected* action take the Subjunctive and are translated *until*:

abī, dum est facultās, *go! while you have a chance.*
dōnec eris fēlīx multōs numerābis amīcōs, *so long as you are lucky, you will count up many friends.*
exspectāvit dum nāvēs convenīrent, *he waited until the ships should assemble.*

For dum with Subjunctive of Proviso see 565.

quamdiū, *as long as*, always takes the Indicative.

quamdiū potuit, tacuit, *he kept still as long as he could.*

534 3. By antequam, priusquam, *before (that), ere.*

Here the time of the leading verb is *earlier* than that of the subordinate clause.

Each may be written as two words, ante . . . quam, prius . . . quam.

They are used with the Indicative to express a known fact or with the Present Subjunctive to express an anticipated fact:

priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *before it is dawn, they are here.*
ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus, *we see the flash ere we hear the sound.*

[Clauses with cum]

"cum temporal"

535 4. By cum, *when, whenever*, to express past, present, or future time with a corresponding tense of the Indicative:

Rōmae videor esse, cum tuās litterās legō, *when I am reading a letter of yours, I seem to be in Rome.*

"cum historical"

536 In expressing past time the Indicative in a historical tense (161) states the *particular time*

when something happened, and the Subjunctive in the Imperfect or Pluperfect the *surroundings* or *situation* in which it happened:

Gallō nārrāvī, cum proximē Rōmae fuī, quid audīssem (189), *when I was last in Rome, I told Gallus what I had heard.*

Zēnōnem, cum Athēnīs essem, audiēbam frequēns, *being in Athens, I regularly used-to-hear Zeno (lecture).*

The Subjunctive is the usual construction.

"cum inverse"

537 In sentences of sudden or unexpected action the subordinate **cum**-clause often contains the leading thought and the principal clause contains the dependent thought. The principal clause comes first, often with **jam**, *already*, **vix**, **aegrē**, *hardly*, or **nōndum**, *not yet*. The **cum**-clause is put last, often with **repente** or **subitō**, *suddenly*:

jam subībat mūrōs, cum repente in eum ērumpunt Rōmānī, *he was already coming-up-to the walls, when suddenly the Romans dash out upon him.*

Here the regular arrangement would be, **cum subībat, ērumpunt Rōmānī,** *when he was coming, the Romans dash out.*

"**cum** inverse" takes the Indicative.

"cum coincident"

538 When both clauses must have the same Subject and Tense, **cum** with the Indicative is often used to show that the action of the principal and subordinate clauses coincides:

cum tacent, clāmant, *when they hold their peace, they cry aloud.*

omnia tribuistī, cum eī rēgium nōmen concessistī, *when you yielded him the royal title, you granted everything.*

"**cum** coincident" takes the Indicative.

"cum relative"

539 After words of Time **cum** often has the force of a Relative Pronoun (= **quō**). The **cum**-clause then becomes Attributive (**500**):

clārus fuit ille diēs cum . . ., *glorious was that day when* (= *in which*).

fuit tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, *there was a time when the Gauls surpassed the Germans in valor.*

So **est cum**, **fuit cum**, **erit cum**, *there is, was, will be* (*a time*) *when.*

"**cum** relative" takes the Indicative or, oftener, the Subjunctive.

540 For **cum** in clauses of Cause and Concession see **542**, **571**.

4. CLAUSES OF CAUSE

541 Clauses of Cause are Adverbial, and take the Indicative or Subjunctive. The negative is **nōn**. They are introduced as follows:

"cum causal"

542 1. By **cum**, *since*, and take the Subjunctive:

quae cum ita sint, *since this is so* (**304**).

Aeduī, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, *since the Aedui could not defend themselves, they sent* (**447**) *envoys to Caesar.*

543 2. By **quandō**, *since*, and take the Indicative:

quandō ad mājōra nātī sumus, *since we are born for greater things.*

544 3. By **quod**, (*in*) *that*, **quia**, *because*, **quoniam**, *inasmuch as, since*, and take the Indicative or Subjunctive.

545 The Indicative is used when the reason of the speaker or writer is asserted; the Subjunctive when the reason of some one else is reported:

Indicative with quod, quia, quoniam

tibi, quod abes, grātulor, *I congratulate you that you are absent.*

concēdō, quia necesse est, *I yield, because I must.*

sōlus erō, quoniam nōn licet esse tuum, *I'll be alone, since I may not be thine.*

Subjunctive with quod, quia, quoniam

546 **Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem,** *Socrates was accused (on the ground) that he was corrupting the youth.* [So his accusers said.]

māter īrāta est, quia nōn redierim, *mother was angry,* (saying it was) *because I did not come back.*

Such Subjunctives are really in Indirect Discourse, with the verb of Saying implied (**597**).

547 A *rejected* reason is introduced by **nōn quod, nōn quō, nōn quia,** *not because,* or by **nōn quod nōn, nōn quō nōn, nōn quīn,** *not because . . . not,* and usually takes the Subjunctive:

nōn quod doleant, *not because they are suffering.* [As might be supposed.]

nōn quīn ab eō dissentiam, *not that I do not disagree with him.*

548 But a *fact* stated as the rejected reason takes the Indicative:

nōn quia multīs dēbeō, *not because I am in debt to many.* [As in fact I am.]

549 As the conjunction **quod** (*in*) *that,* (*for the reason*) *that,* is nothing but **quod,** *which, that,* the neuter of the relative pronoun used with a causal meaning, it is easy to confuse the two uses. But notice that

The Conjunctional **quod**-clause acts as an Adverb of cause (Adverbial Clause, **501**).

The Relative **quod**-clause acts as a Noun (Substantive Clause, **498**):

gaudeō quod tē interpellāvī, *I am glad that I interrupted you.* Conjunctional clause (cause of **gaudeō**). **quod rediīt mīrābile vidētur**, *that he returned seems marvelous.* Relative clause (acts as Subject of **vidētur**).

5. CLAUSES OF CONDITION

550 The Conditional Clause is introduced by **sī**, *if*, **sī nōn**, **sī minus**, *if not*, **nisi**, *unless*, or **sīn**, *but if*. It is Adverbial (**501**).

It is always part of a Conditional Sentence:

sī vīs, potes, *if you will, you can.*

THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE

551 The Conditional Sentence is made up of

1. The Condition, or subordinate clause, and
2. The Conclusion, or principal clause.

Thus in **sī vīs, potes**, the Condition is **sī vīs**, *if you will*, and the Conclusion is **potes**, *you can.*

The Condition is also called the Prótasis, and the Conclusion the Apódosis.

552 Conditional Sentences take the Indicative or the Subjunctive.

Both the Condition and Conclusion are regularly in the same Mood; very frequently in the same Tense.

FIRST KIND: CONDITION AS FACT

553 I. The Indicative is used when the Condition is stated as if it were a Fact. Any tense may be used:

sī adest, bene est, *if he is here, it is well.*

sī nescīs, tibi īgnōscō, *if you don't know, I forgive you.*

hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, *if there was any very-hard (fighting), these men rushed in.*

sī fortūna volet, fīēs cōnsul, *if fortune (shall) will it, consul you will be.*

sī peccāvī, īnsciēns fēcī, *if I have sinned, I did so unknowing(ly).*

convincam, sī negās, *I will prove it, if you (now) deny it.*

554 When the Conclusion has a *future meaning* it may be Subjunctive or Imperative instead of the regular Indicative:

quod sī nōn possumus facere, moriāmur, *if we cannot do it, let us die.*

sī peccāvī, mihi īgnōsce, *if I have sinned, forgive me.*

SECOND KIND: CONDITION AS POSSIBLE

555 II. The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are used when the Condition is stated as Possible.

The Present and Perfect are used in these Conditions with little or no difference of meaning.

sī adsit, bene sit, *if he should be here, it would be well.*

sī adfuerit, bene sit, *if he should be here, it would be well.*

dī sī cūrent, bene bonīs sit, *should the gods care, (all) would go well with the good.*

556 The Conclusion is sometimes in the Present or Future Indicative:

memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceās, *the memory weakens, unless one exercises it* (494).

sī cupiās, licēbit, *if you (so) desire, it will be allowed.*

THIRD KIND: CONDITION AS CONTRARY TO FACT

557 III. The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used when the Condition is stated as Contrary to Fact.

The Imperfect is used for Present Conditions and the Pluperfect for Past Conditions:

sī adesset, bene esset, *if he were here, it would be well.*

sī vīveret, verba ējus audīrētis, *were he alive, you would hear his statement.*

sī adfuisset, bene fuisset, *if he had been here, it would have been well.*

nisi mīlitēs essent dēfessī, hostium cōpiae dēlētae essent, *if the soldiers had not been worn out, the forces of the enemy would have been destroyed.*

nisi ante Rōmā profectus essēs, nunc eam certē relinquerēs, *if you had not left Rome before, you would certainly leave it now.*

558 1. The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used to express *continued* or *usual past action:*

sī nihil litterīs adjuvārentur, numquam sē ad eārum studium contulissent, *if they were getting no help from literature, they never would have betaken themselves to its study.*

quae nisi essent in senibus, nōn summum cōnsilium mājōrēs nostrī appellāssent senātum, *if these (traits) were not (usual) in older men, our ancestors would not have called our highest council the Senate.*

2. When the Conclusion is stated strongly as what *could, should,* or *must* have happened, or *nearly* happened, the verb is usually Indicative, often in Periphrastic form (188):

dēlērī potuit exercitus, sī quis aggredī ausus esset, *the army could have been destroyed* (479), *if any one had dared to attack (it).*

relictūrī agrōs erant, nisi litterās mīsisset, *they were going-to-leave (their) lands, if he had not sent a letter.*

Opposing and Negative Conditions

559 **nisi**, *unless*, negatives the whole clause:

parva sunt forīs arma, nisi est cōnsilium domī, *arms avail little abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.*

560 **sī nōn**, *if not*, negatives the single word which follows the **nōn**:

quod sī nōn possumus facere, moriāmur, *if we can't do it, let us die!*

561 **sī nōn** (or **sī minus**) introduces an opposing negative Condition.

1. Repeating a preceding positive condition in negative form:

sī fēceris, māgnam habēbō grātiam; sī nōn fēceris, īgnōscam, *if you do it, I shall be very grateful; if you don't, I'll forgive (you).*

2. Modifying a Conclusion containing **at, tamen, certē**:

cum spē, sī nōn bonā, at aliquā tamen vīvō, *still, I am living; if not with good hope, yet with some.*

NOTE: **sī minus** is used only when the verb in the repeated condition is omitted:

ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs; sī minus, quam plūrimōs, *take with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible.*

562 **sīn**, *but if*, introduces an opposing positive Condition:

sī vērum est . . . , sīn falsum . . . , *if it is true . . . , but if false . . .*

Conditional Clauses of Wish and Proviso

563 These clauses are Adverbial. They are introduced by **dum, modo, dummodo**, *if only, provided that*, and take the Subjunctive. They contain a Condition stated either as a Wish or as a Proviso. The negative is **nē**.

564 Wish (*if only*):

dum nē tibi videor, nōn labōrō, *if only I do not seem so to you, I do not worry.*

multī honesta neglegunt, dummodo potentiam cōnsequantur, *many neglect honor, if only they may gain power.*

565 Proviso (*provided that, so*):

valētūdō modo bona sit, *provided the health be good.*

ōderint, dum metuant, *let them hate, so they fear.*

dum nē, *if only . . . not, provided . . . not*, must not be confused with nēdum, *much less*:

nēdum tū possīs, *much less could you.*

6. CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

566 Clauses of Comparison are Adverbial. The negative is nōn.

567 I. Conditional Clauses of Comparison are introduced by sī following some word meaning *as* or *than*, and take the Subjunctive.

These words (with sī added) are ac sī, ut sī, quasi, quam sī, velut (sī), tamquam (sī):

velut sī cōram adesset, horrēbant, *they trembled, just as if he were there before them.*

quid hīs testibus ūtor, quasi rēs dubia sit, *why do I use these witnesses, as if (indeed) the matter were obscure.*

568 II. Correlative Clauses of Comparison are introduced by ut, sīcut, quemadmodum, *as*, and take the Indicative.

A correlative demonstrative word, such as ita, sīc, item, *so, likewise*, often stands in the principal clause:

perge ut īnstituistī, *go on as you have started.*

ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs, *as you have done your sowing, so shall you reap.*

quemadmodum Caesar inquit, *as Caesar says.*

7. CLAUSES OF CONCESSION

569 Clauses of Concession are Adverbial. The negative is **nōn**.

Notice that what is *conceded* in the subordinate clause is *opposed* in the principal clause, which often contains **tamen**, **certē**, or **sānē**.

570 I. With **quamquam**, *although*, they generally take the Indicative:

quamquam festīnās, nōn est mora longa, *although you are in haste, the delay is not long.*

NOTE: **quamquam** in a principal clause means *and yet:* **quamquam quid loquor,** *and yet why do I speak?*

571 II. With **cum**, **licet**, *although*, **ut**, (*grant*) *that*, they take the Subjunctive:

Atticus honōrēs nōn petiit, cum eī patērent, *Atticus did not seek honors, although they were open to him.*

licet omnēs fremant, ego nōn tacēbō, *though all should rave (at me), I shall not hold-my-peace.*

vērum ut hōc nōn sit, (*grant*) *that this is not true.*

NOTE: **licet**, (*it is*) *allowed*, is in origin a verb in the *present tense*, and keeps its verbal force even when used as a conjunction. Hence it is followed only by the present or perfect subjunctive.

572 III. With **etsī**, **tametsī**, **etiamsī**, **quamvīs**, *even if, although*, they take the Indicative or Subjunctive like Conditional clauses with **sī**:

etsī mōns Cevenna altissimā nive iter impediēbat, Caesar tamen profectus est, *Caesar started nevertheless, although the Cevennes mountains were blocking (his) way with very deep snow.*

quamvīs sīs molestus, numquam tē esse cōnfitēbor malum, *though you may be annoying, I will never admit that you are bad.*

NEGATIVE CONJUNCTIONAL CLAUSES WITH quīn

573 The negative conjunction **quīn**, *why not, that not* (*but, nay*), is made of the relative adverb **quī**, *why*, and **ne**, *not*.

574 I. It is sometimes used in principal clauses to state commands and direct questions:

quīn ūnō verbō dīc, *nay, tell* (*me*) *in one word.*
quīn cōnscendimus equōs, *why not mount our horses?*

II. Otherwise it always introduces subordinate clauses which follow principal clauses of negative meaning:

nēmō est quīn audierit, *there is nobody who has not heard.*

575 Subordinate clauses with **quīn** always take the Subjunctive. This happens especially after:

576 1. Words of Doubt or Omission. (Like an Indirect Question.)

nōn dubium est quīn uxōrem nōlit fīlius, *there is no doubt that* (*my*) *son does not want a wife.*
nihil abest quīn sim miserrimus, *nothing is lacking to make me most unhappy* (literally, *why I should not be*).

577 2. Verbs of Hindering. (Purpose or Result.)

retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla conjicerent, *they could not be kept from hurling their pikes.*

578 3. **nūllus, nēmō, nihil, quis.** (Result or Characteristic.)

nēmō est quīn audierit, *there is nobody who has not heard.*
quis est quīn cernat, *who is there that does not perceive?*

579 4. **facere nōn possum, fierī nōn potest.** (Result.)

facere nōn possum quīn tibi grātiās agam, *I can not help thanking you.*
fierī nōn potest quīn tibi grātiās agam, *it is impossible for me not to thank you.*

II. RELATIVE CLAUSES

580 Relative Clauses are introduced by relative words, especially by the relative pronoun **quī**, *who, that* (147, 299). The negative is **nōn**.

581 Other relative words used are—

1. The Adjectives **quantus**, *as much*, **quālis**, *as*, **quot**, *as many* (152).

2. Adverbs such as **ubi**, *when, where*, **unde**, *whence*, **quō**, *where, whither*, **quotiēns**, *as often as*, and the relative adverbs so often used as conjunctions, such as **quandō**, **cum**, *when*, **ut**, **utī**, **quam**, *as*.

582 Compound or General Relatives are those formed by doubling, or by adding **-cumque**, *-ever*.

Thus **quisquis**, **quīcumque**, *whoever*, **quantuscumque**, *however much*, **ubicumque**, *wherever*.

583 Clauses introduced by General Relatives regularly take the Indicative:

quidquid id est, *whatever it is.*
quācumque iter fēcit, *wherever he made his way.*

584 Relative Clauses are primarily like adjectives in their use. But they are more often used with the force of an adverb.

585 I. When the Relative Clause simply describes, like an adjective (500), it takes the Indicative:

pōns quī erat ad Genāvam, *the bridge which was near Geneva.*

Here **quī erat ad Genāvam** simply describes **pōns**.

586 II. When the Relative Clause, like the Conjunctional (503), expresses Purpose, Result, Time,

Cause, Condition, Comparison, or Concession, it is Adverbial in force.

Notice that Relative Clauses used adverbially and Conjunctional Clauses express in the main the same ideas, with the same use of moods and tenses.

1. Purpose (**517**):

equitātum praemittit quī videant, *he sends forward cavalry to see* (*who may see*).

2. Characteristic (Result, **527**):

secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent, *there came storms that kept our* (*soldiers*) *in camp.*

Note: It is doubtful whether there are any relative clauses of pure Result. Most, if not all, so-called relative clauses of Result are better explained as clauses of Characteristic (**587**).

3. Time (with relative adverb, **529**):

quandō omnēs creātī sunt, tum ad eōs deus fātur, *when all were created, then to them spake the god.*

4. Cause (**541**):

ō fortūnāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris, *happy youth! who hast found a Homer* (*as*) *the herald of thy valor.*

5. Condition (**550**):

quī vidēret, urbem captam dīceret, *whoever saw it, would say the city* (*was*) *taken.* Here **quī** = **sī quis**, *if any one, whoever.*

6. Comparison (**566**):

mājus gaudium fuit quam quod ūniversum hominēs acciperent, (*their*) *joy was greater than that men commonly experience.*

7. Concession (569):

absolvite eum, quī sē fateātur pecūniās accēpisse, *although he confesses that he has accepted money, acquit him.*

Clauses of Characteristic

587 A relative clause which states definitely the natural result or *character* of something suggested indefinitely in the principal clause, is called a Clause of Characteristic. Such clauses are Attributive, and take the Subjunctive:

nōn is sum quī terrear, *I'm not the man to be frightened* (literally, *who may be frightened*).
secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent, *there came storms that kept our* (*soldiers*) *in camp.*

588 Clauses of Characteristic are used after

1. Principal clauses containing is, ējusmodī, tālis, tantus, tam:

ea est Rōmāna gēns quae victa quiēscere nesciat, *the Roman race is one that knows not* (*how*) *to stay quiet* (*when*) *conquered.*

2. General expressions, positive or negative, containing est quī, sunt quī:

sunt quī putent, *there are* (*some*) *who think.*
quid est quod velīs, *what is it that you wish?*
erant itinera duo quibus itineribus exīre possent, *there were two routes by which they could depart.*
nēmō est quī nesciat, *there is nobody who does not know.*
rēs est ūna sōlaque quae possit facere et servāre beātum, *'tis the one and only thing that can make and keep* (*you*) *happy.*

3. dīgnus, *worthy*, indīgnus, *unworthy*, idōneus, *fit*:

rēs dīgna est quam cōnsīderēmus, *the matter is worth our consideration* (literally, *worthy, which we may consider*).

indīgnus est quī imperet, *he is unworthy to rule.*

idōneus quī ad bellum mittātur, *fit to be sent to the war.*

589 Relative clauses *stating a restriction* are characteristic:

quod sciam, *so far as I know.* They are usually Subjunctive.

Catōnis ōrātiōnēs, quās quidem lēgerim, *Cato's orations, so far, at least, as I have read them* (= *those that I have read*).

III. INTERROGATIVE CLAUSES (INDIRECT QUESTIONS)

590 Subordinate interrogative clauses, or Indirect Questions, are Substantive clauses (498) used as the subject or object of verbs of *asking, saying, thinking,* or of interest and rēfert. They are introduced by the same interrogative words that are used in Direct Questions (280, 281). The verb is always Subjunctive.

The Indirect Question is one form of Indirect Discourse (597):

quaerō quid faciās, *I ask what you are doing.*

dīc mihi ubi fueris, *tell me where you were.*

mīror cūr mē accūsēs, *I wonder why you accuse me.*

multum interest quis dīcat, *who says* (*so*) *is quite important.*

591 Indirect Questions may easily be confused with Relative Clauses (580). It must be remembered that the Indirect Question differs from the Relative Clause:

1. In depending on a special kind of verb (asking, saying, thinking).

2. In its introducing word (an Interrogative).

dīc mihi quid habeās, *tell me what you have*, contains an Indirect Question.

dā mihi quod habēs, *give me what you have*, contains a Relative Clause.

ūtile est scīre quid futūrum sit, *it is useful to know what will happen*, contains an Indirect Question.

effugere nēmō potest quod futūrum est, *none can escape what will happen*, contains a Relative Clause.

592 The negative particles (**240**, 5) **num**, **-ne**, are used in Indirect Questions in the sense of *whether* or *if*. But **nōnne** is used only after **quaerō**, and is rare:

num quid vellet rogāvī, *I asked if he wanted anything.*

rogāvit essentne fūsī hostēs, *he asked whether the enemy were routed.*

593 An Indirect Question depending on a verb of *waiting* or *trying* may be introduced by **sī**, *if*, *whether*:

exspectābam sī quid scrīberēs, *I was waiting (to see) if you would write anything.*

cōnantur sī perrumpere possent, *they try whether they can break through.*

594 Indirect Double Questions are usually introduced by the same particles that are used in Direct Double Questions (**281**):

dīc utrum vērum an falsum sit
dīc vērumne an falsum sit
dīc vērum an falsum sit
dīc vērum falsumne sit

} *say whether it is true or false.*

dīc vērum sit necne, *say whether it is true or not.*

595 The second part of an Indirect Double Question often occurs alone after **haud sciō an, nesciō an**, meaning *I don't know but, I almost think, I fancy*:

haud sciō an falsum sit, *I almost think it is false.*

596 # SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS

A. IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

I. Indicative: action of verb *as fact*. Negative **nōn**.

No introducing words.

II. Subjunctive: action of verb *as thought of*.

1. As *willed*: Volitive Subjunctive. Negative **nē**.

No introducing words.

In Commanding: Jussive Subjunctive.

In Conceding: Concessive Subjunctive.

2. As *desired*: Optative Subjunctive. Negative **nē**.

utinam often used as introducing word.

3. As *possible*: Conditional Subjunctive. Negative **nōn**.

As what *can* be: Potential Subjunctive.

No introducing words.

As *possible* (= Conclusion) on *any condition* (= Condition): Conditional Subjunctive.

Introducing words: Conclusion, none.

[Condition, **sī, sī nōn, nisi, sīn, sī minus.**]

III. Imperative: action of verb *as command*. Negative **nē** (see **496**).

No introducing words.

B. IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

Indicative only in clauses of *fact*; otherwise the Subjunctive.

Uses of Subordinate Clauses.

1. As Noun: Substantive Clause.
2. As Adjective: Attributive Clause.
3. As Adverb: Adverbial Clause.

Forms of Subordinate Clauses.

I. Introduced by a Conjunction: Conjunctional Clause.

1. Purpose: Subjunctive always. Negative **nē, quōminus.**

Introducing words:
positive, **ut (utī), quō.**
negative, **nē, quōminus.**

Uses: Substantive, Adverbial.

2. Result: Subjunctive always. Negative **nōn.**

Introducing words:
positive, **ut.**
negative, **ut nōn.**

Uses: Substantive, Adverbial.

3. Time: Indicative or Subjunctive. Negative **nōn**.
Introducing words: Use: Adverbial only.
With Indicative: **postquam, ubi, ut, cum prīmum, ubi prīmum, simul ac.**
With Indicative or Subjunctive: **cum, dum, dōnec, quoad, antequam, priusquam.**

4. Cause: Indicative or Subjunctive. Negative **nōn**.
Introducing words: Use: Adverbial only.
With Indicative: **quandō.**
With Subjunctive: **cum.**
With either: **quod, quia, quoniam.**

5. Condition: Indicative or Subjunctive. Negative **nōn**.
Introducing words: **sī, sī nōn, nisi, sīn, sī minus.** Use: Adverbial only.

KINDS OF CONDITIONS

(1) As *a fact*:
Condition in Indicative (any tense).
Conclusion in Indicative (any tense). See **554**.

(2) As *possible*:
Condition in Subjunctive (Present or Perfect).
Conclusion in Subjunctive (Present or Perfect).

(3) As *contrary to fact*:
Condition in Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect).
Conclusion in Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect).

6. Comparison: Indicative or Subjunctive. Negative **nōn**.
Introducing words: Use: Adverbial only.
With Indicative: **ut, sīcut, quemadmodum.**
With Subjunctive: **ac sī, ut sī, quasi, quam sī, velut(sī), tamquam(sī).**

7. Concession: Indicative or Subjunctive. Negative **nōn**.
Introducing words: Use: Adverbial only.
With Indicative: **quamquam.**
With Subjunctive: **cum, licet, ut.**
With either: **etsī, tametsī, etiamsī, quamvīs.**

II. Introduced by a Relative: Relative Clause.

Moods: Same as in Conjunctional Clauses (Purpose, Result, etc.).
Introducing words: **quī, quantus, quālis, quot, ubi, unde, quō, quotiēns, quandō, cum, ut (utī), quam.** Uses: Attributive, Adverbial.
Also **quisquis, quīcumque, ubicumque,** and other General Relatives.

III. Introduced by an Interrogative: Indirect Question.

Introducing words: Use: Substantive only.
In Simple Question: interrogative words (**280, 281**) **num, -ne, (sī).** Mood: Subjunctive only.
In Double Question: **utrum . . . an** (see **594**).

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

597 A sentence quoted in its exact words without any change is in Direct Discourse (ōrātiō rēcta):

Solōn dīcēbat: nēmō ante obitum est beātus, *Solon used to say "Nobody is happy before (his) death."*

598 A sentence quoted in dependence on a verb of Saying or Thinking is in Indirect Discourse (ōrātiō oblīqua):

Solōn dīcēbat nēminem ante obitum esse beātum, *Solon used to say that nobody was happy before (his) death.*

The sentence in Indirect Discourse is usually the Object of the verb of Saying or Thinking.

The rules for turning Direct into Indirect Discourse are as follows:

MOODS

IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

599 I. Declarative sentences go into the Infinitive, with the Subject expressed in the Accusative; Interrogative and Imperative sentences go into the Subjunctive.

600 Declarative:

mōns ab hostibus tenētur, *the mountain is held by the enemy.* (Direct.)

dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī, *he says that the mountain is held by the enemy.* (Indirect.)

id faciam, *I shall do it.* (Direct.)

Caesar dīxit sē id factūrum (esse), *Caesar said that he would do it.* (Indirect.)

601 Interrogative:

quid tibi vīs? cūr venīs? *what do you want? why do you come?* (Direct.)

pauca respondit: quid sibi vellet, cūr venīret, *he replied briefly: what did he want? why did he come?* (Indirect.)

602 Imperative:

lēgātōs mittite, *send envoys.* (Direct.)

respondit lēgātōs mittant, *he replied (that) they should send envoys.* (Indirect.)

603 As Rhetorical questions (**283**) are really Declarative, they go into the Infinitive:

plēbs fremit: quid sē vīvere, *the people roar out: why are they alive (at all)?*

The Direct form is **quid vīvimus,** *why are we alive (at all)?*—a Rhetorical question.

604 Imperative sentences (**602**) usually go into the Subjunctive without **ut** or with **nē**:

respondit lēgātōs mittant, *he replied (that) they should send envoys.*

obsecrāvit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret, *he besought him not to do anything very severe to his brother.*

But **jubeō,** *command,* and **vetō,** *forbid,* govern the Infinitive:

nāvēs aedificārī jubet, *he orders ships to be built.*

IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

605 II. Subordinate clauses become or remain Subjunctive:

concēdō, quia necesse est, *I yield because it is necessary.* (Direct.)

dīcō mē concēdere, quia necesse sit, *I say that I yield because it is necessary.* (Indirect.)

dīcēbam mē concēdere, quia necesse esset, *I was saying that I yielded because it was necessary.* (Indirect.)

606 1. But a subordinate clause equal in force to an added principal clause sometimes goes into the Infinitive with the Subject in the Accusative:

Ariovistus rēspondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum (vēnisse), *Ariovistus replied that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people (came).*

This is common in Relative clauses with Demonstrative force (**quī = et is** or **et ille**): **ex quō illud cōnsequī**, *and from this it happens.*

607 2. A clause of simple fact or incidental explanation may remain in the Indicative:

certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs discessisse, *he was informed that all had departed from that part of the village which he had allotted to the Gauls.*

quis neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum potestāte administrārī, *who could deny that all these (things) which we see are ruled by the power of the gods?*

TENSES

608 III. Tenses of the Infinitive follow the rules for the Infinitive (**632–636**).

Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the rule for the Sequence of Tenses (**462–471**).

But after a historical tense the Present Subjunctive is often used to make the statement more vivid:

Caesar respondit, sī obsidēs dentur, sēsē pācem esse factūrum, *Caesar replied that, if hostages should be given (instantly), he would make peace.*

PERSONS

609 IV. After a verb of Saying or Thinking in the Third Person, verbs and pronouns in the First or Second Person change to the Third:

Ariovistus Caesarī dīxit :	*Ariovistus said to Caesar :*
(ego) in Galliam vēnī	*I came into Gaul*
sē in Galliam vēnisse	*that he (Ariovistus) had come into Gaul*
(tū) in Galliam vēnistī	*you came into Gaul*
illum in Galliam vēnisse	*that he (Caesar) had come into Gaul*

Notice that **sē**, the Reflexive Pronoun, refers to the Subject of **dīxit** (**421**, **422**).

Notice that **illum** refers to some other person than the Subject of **dīxit** (**426**, **137**).

610 Thus the First Personal **ego**, **nōs**, become **sē**; **meus**, **noster**, become **suus** (**140**).

The Second Personal **tū**, **vōs**, become **ille** or **is** (**137**).

611 After verbs of Saying or Thinking in the First Person, the verbs and pronouns do not change their Person :

DIRECT	INDIRECT
dīxī : (ego) in Galliam vēnī	mē in Galliam vēnisse
dīxī : (tū) in Galliam vēnistī	tē in Galliam vēnisse
dīxī : (ille) in Galliam vēnit	illum in Galliam vēnisse

612 After verbs of Saying or Thinking in the Second Person, the First Person changes to Second, the Second to First, and the Third remains Third :

DIRECT	INDIRECT
dīxistī : (ego) in Galliam vēnī	tē in Galliam vēnisse
dīxistī : (tū) in Galliam vēnistī	mē in Galliam vēnisse
dīxistī : (ille) in Galliam vēnit	illum in Galliam vēnisse

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

613 The Condition becomes or remains Subjunctive, and the Conclusion becomes Infinitive (**605**, **599**) :

sī hōc crēdō, errō, *if I believe this, I am wrong.*
dīcit, sī hōc crēdat, sē errāre, *he says that, if he believes this, he is wrong.*

614 But if the Conclusion was an Interrogative or Imperative sentence in Direct Discourse, it becomes Subjunctive. See 599.

sīn persevērāret, reminīscerētur prīstīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum, *but if he persisted (said they), he should remember the ancient valor of the Helvetians.*

In Direct Discourse: **sīn persevērās, reminīscere,** *if you persist, remember.*

I. FIRST KIND: CONDITION AS FACT (553)

615 **sī hōc crēdō, errō,** *if I believe this, I am wrong.*
dīcit, sī hōc crēdat, sē errāre.
dīxit, sī hōc crēderet, sē errāre.

sī hōc crēdam, errābō, *if I (shall) believe this, I shall be wrong.*
dīcit, sī hōc crēdat, sē errātūrum esse.
dīxit, sī hōc crēderet, sē errātūrum esse.

sī hōc crēdēbam, errāvī, *if I believed this, I was wrong.*
dīcit, sī hōc crēderet, sē errāvisse.
dīxit, sī hōc crēderet, sē errāvisse.

II. SECOND KIND: CONDITION AS POSSIBLE (555)

616 The Conclusion becomes Future Infinitive:

sī hōc crēdam, errem, *if I should believe this, I should be wrong.*
dīcit, sī hōc crēdat, sē errātūrum esse.
dīxit, sī hōc crēderet, sē errātūrum esse.

III. THIRD KIND: CONDITION CONTRARY TO FACT (557)

617 The Condition always remains unchanged in *Tense* (471), as well as in Mood.

The Conclusion becomes Infinitive in the following manner:

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive becomes the Infinitive in **-ūrum esse.**

This is the Present Infinitive in Periphrastic form (188).

2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive becomes the Infinitive in **-ūrum fuisse.**

This is the Perfect Infinitive in Periphrastic form (**188**).

sī hōc crēderem, errārem, *if I believed this, I would be in error.*

sī hōc crēdidissem, errāvissem, *if I had believed this, I would have been in error.*

dīcit, dīxit, } **sī hōc crēderet, sē errātūrum esse.**

dīcit, dīxit, } **sī hōc crēdidisset, sē errātūrum fuisse.**

618 Notice that in passing into Indirect Discourse the Conditional sentences lose some of their differences of form, and consequently are at times less exact in meaning than in Direct Discourse. A striking example is **dīxit, sī hōc crēderet, sē errātūrum esse,** occurring in **615, 616, 617.**

619 If the Conclusion is in the Passive Voice:

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive becomes **futūrum esse (fore) ut** with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive becomes **futūrum fuisse ut** with the Imperfect Subjunctive:

nisi eō ipsō tempore pervēnisset, exīstimābant plērīque futūrum fuisse ut oppidum āmitterētur, *had he not arrived at that very time, most (persons) thought the town would have been lost.*

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

620 In clauses which depend on a subordinate Subjunctive or a subordinate Infinitive, and form a necessary part of the thought, the verb is said to be *attracted* into the Subjunctive:

mōs est Syrācūsīs ut, sī quā dē rē ad senātum referātur, dīcat sententiam quī velit, *it is the custom at Syracuse that if anything is brought up in the Senate, (any one) who likes may speak his opinion.*

Here **sī ad senātum referātur** and **quī velit** depend on

the subordinate Subjunctive clause **ut dīcat sententiam** and are attracted into the Subjunctive.

mōs est Athēnīs laudārī in cōntiōne eōs, quī sint in proeliīs interfectī, *it is the custom at Athens that those who have fallen in battle are eulogized in public.*

Here **quī sint in proeliīs interfectī** depends on the subordinate Infinitive clause **laudārī in cōntiōne eōs,** and is attracted into the Subjunctive.

Verbal Nouns and Adjectives (157)

621 The Verbal Nouns are the Infinitive, Gerund, and Supine. The Verbal Adjectives are the Participle and Gerundive.

THE INFINITIVE

622 The Infinitive acts as a neuter noun. It is chiefly used as Subject or Object:

errāre est hūmānum, *to err is human.* (Subject.)
vereor dīcere, *I am afraid to say.* (Object.)

623 The Infinitive, with or without a Subject Accusative, is used as the Subject of **esse** and impersonal verbs:

dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī, *to die for our country is sweet and noble.*

mīrum est tē nihil scrībere, *it is strange that you write nothing.*

placuit Caesarī Avāricum incendī, *Caesar thought Avaricum should be burnt.*

624 The Infinitive is also used as a Predicate Noun (**290**) or an Appositive (**291**):

vīvere est cōgitāre, *to live is to think.* (Predicate Noun.)

ōrāculum erat datum victrīcēs Athēnās fore, *the response had been given that Athens would be victor.* (Appositive.)

625 The Infinitive, with or without a Subject Accusative, is used as the Object:

scīre volēbat, *he wanted to know.*
dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī, *he says the mountain is held by the enemy.*

626 I. It is used, *without* Subject Accusative, after verbs which need another verb with the same subject to complete their action.

Such are the auxiliary (or "helping") verbs cupiō, volō, nōlō, mālō; possum; dēbeō.

Also verbs meaning

begin, *continue*, *cease*, as incipiō, pergō, dēsinō.
try, *dare*, *strive*, *hasten*, as cōnor, audeō, studeō, mātūrō.
purpose, *prepare*, *decide*, as cōgitō, parō, dēcernō.
accustom, *teach*, *learn*, *know*, as soleō, doceō, discō, sciō.
neglect, *be satisfied*, as neglegō, satis habeō.
hesitate, *delay*, *fear*, as dubitō, cunctor, vereor.

scīre volēbat, *he wanted to know.*
praeterita mūtāre nōn possumus, *we cannot change the past.*
proficīscī mātūrat, *he hastens to set forth.*
Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat, *he had decided to cross the Rhine.*

627 Exceptions occur, but are not frequent:

cupiō mē esse clēmentem, *I wish to be considerate.*

628 II. It is used *with* Subject Accusative after verbs of Saying and Thinking. (This is Indirect Discourse.)

The verbs of Saying include those of *telling*, *promising*, *informing*, *accusing*, *admitting*, and their opposites.

The verbs of Thinking include those of *knowing*, *perceiving*, *remembering*, *hoping*, *suspecting*, *pretending*, *feeling*, and their opposites:

dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī, *he says the mountain is held by the enemy.*
prōmittit sē ventūrum esse, *he promises to come.*
nōsce tē esse hominem, *know that you are a man.*
tē advēnisse gaudeō, *I am glad you have arrived.*

629 Here may be included

jubeō, *command*, **vetō**, *forbid*, **sinō**, **patior**, *allow*, **cōgō**, *compel*, **prohibeō**, *prevent*, **cupiō**, **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**,—when governing an Infinitive having a different Subject:

Germānī vīnum importārī nōn sinunt, *the Germans do not allow wine to be imported.*
Hadriānus fīnem imperiī esse voluit Euphrātem, *Hadrian wished the Euphrates to be the boundary of the empire.*

630 Some special uses (mostly poetical) are as follows:

1. To express the End or Purpose:

quid habēs dīcere, *what have you to say?*
cūnctī suāsērunt Ītaliam petere, *all advised to seek Italy.*

2. After a few adjectives:

parātus audīre, *prepared to hear.*
cantārī dīgnus, *worthy to be sung.*

3. In exclamations; sometimes with **-ne** added to the Subject Accusative:

tē sīc vexārī, *you to be so troubled!*
tēne hōc dīcere, *you to say this!*
mēne dēsistere, *I to stop!*

631 The Nominative is used with the Infinitive

1. Always as Subject of the Historical Infinitive—the Present Infinitive used in lively narration instead of the Indicative.

Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, *Caesar keeps asking the Aedui for the grain.*

2. Often as Predicate Noun or Adjective:

cōnsul esse potuī, *I might have been consul* (**479**).
omnēs student fierī beātī, *all strive to become happy.*

3. Often in Passive sentences:

dīcitur Homērus caecus fuisse, *Homer is said to have been blind.*

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

632 The Tenses of the Infinitive have no independent time of their own, but a time which depends on the leading verb.

633 The Perfect Infinitive expresses the *same time* as the time of the leading verb:

dīcit sē scrībere, *he says* (now) *he is writing* (now).
dīcēbat sē scrībere, *he said* (then) *he was writing* (then).

For Present Infinitive with **dēbuī, oportuit, potuī, erat**, see **479**.

634 The Perfect Infinitive expresses *time before* the time of the leading verb:

dīcit sē scrīpsisse, *he says* (now) *he has written* (before now).
dīcēbat sē scrīpsisse, *he said* (then) *he had written* (before then).

635 The Future Infinitive expresses *time after* the time of the leading verb:

dīcit sē scrīptūrum (esse), *he says* (now) *he will write* (later).
dīcēbat sē scrīptūrum (esse), *he said* (then) *he would write* (later).

636 Verbs which lack the Participial Stem (171) supply their missing Future Infinitive by **fore ut** or **futūrum esse ut** with the Subjunctive:

spērō fore ut contingat id nōbīs, *I hope (it may happen that) this good luck befalls us.*

The same construction is often preferred even in verbs which have the Participial Stem:

Rōmānī spērābant fore ut Gallī vincerentur, *the Romans hoped (it would happen) that the Gauls would be conquered.*

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

637 The Gerund (157) is a *noun* with the force of an Active verb:

mēns cōgitandō alitur, *the mind is nourished by thinking.*

cōnsilium urbem capiendī, *a plan for taking the city* (literally, *of taking*).

Here the Gerund **capiendī** governs **urbem** as Object.

The Gerund is not used in the Nominative or Vocative.

638 The Gerundive (157) is an *adjective* with the force of a Passive verb.

It acts as a Future Passive Participle, and, with **sum**, forms the Passive of the Periphrastic Conjugation (188). It then expresses what *must be done* or *ought to be done:*

liber legendus, *a book to be read (= that ought to be read).*

cōnsilium urbis capiendae, *a plan for taking the city* (literally, *of the city to be taken*).

Here the Gerundive **capiendae** agrees with **urbis**.

639 The Gerund is used as follows:

1. Genitive of Definition (348):

ars scrībendī, *the art of writing.* **modus vīvendī,** *manner of living.*

Here belongs the Genitive with **causā** or **grātiā,** *for the sake.*

hiemandī causā, *for the sake of passing-the-winter.*

Objective Genitive with Adjectives (**352**):

cupidus bellandī, *desirous of waging war.*

2. Dative of Purpose (**344**):

aqua ūtilis est bibendō, *water is useful for drinking.*

3. Accusative, only after prepositions **ad, in, inter, ob**:

dant sē ad lūdendum, *they give themselves to playing.*

4. Ablative (Means, **386**):

mēns cōgitandō alitur, *the mind is nourished by thinking.*

Often with the prepositions **ab, dē, ex, in**:

in jubendō et vetandō, *in commanding and forbidding.*
ex discendō capiunt voluptātem, *they get pleasure out-of learning.*

640 The Gerundive in agreement with its noun is to be preferred to the Gerund governing a Direct Object.

Instead of the Gerund:	Use the Gerundive:
Gen. **urbem capiendī**,	**urbis capiendae**, *of taking the city.*
Dat. **urbem capiendō**,	**urbī capiendae**, *for taking the city.*
Acc. **ad urbem capiendum**,	**ad urbem capiendam**, *for taking the city.*
Abl. **urbem capiendō**,	**urbe capiendā**, *by taking the city.*

641 But when the Object is a *neuter* pronoun or adjective used as a noun the Gerund must be used:

aliquid faciendī, *of doing something* (not **alicūjus faciendī**).
cupiditās plūra habendī, *greed for having more* (not **plūrium habendōrum**).

This avoids confusing the neuter and masculine genders.

642 The Genitives **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī**, are used with Gerundives without regard to Gender or Number:

vestrī adhortandī causā, *for the sake of encouraging you.*
mulier suī servandī causā aufūgit, *the woman fled for the sake of saving herself.*

643 The Gerundive is used as follows:

I. Attributive Adjective (295, Note):

lēgēs observandae, *laws to-be-respected.*

II. Predicate Adjective (295, Note):

lēgēs sunt observandae, *laws are to-be-respected.*

644 The Predicate use is common, and occurs

1. In the Passive of the Periphrastic Conjugation (188) with or without the Dative of the Agent (339):

Caesarī omnia erant agenda, *Caesar had to do everything* (literally, *everything had to be done by Caesar*).

Intransitive verbs in this construction are always impersonal:

(mihi) eundum est, (*I*) *must go.*
paenitendum est malī. (*one*) *should repent of evil.*
ūtendum est dīvitiīs, nōn abūtendum, (*we*) *should use wealth, not abuse it.*

2. In expressing Purpose after verbs of Giving, Sending, Caring, Permitting, Undertaking, and the like:

pontem faciendum cūrat, *he orders a bridge made.*
urbem dīripiendam dedit, *he gave-over the city to be plundered.*

THE PARTICIPLE

645 Participles are adjectives in form, and verbs, as well as adjectives, in force.

They occur in the Present, Future, and Perfect Tenses as follows:

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PERFECT
Active voice.	**amāns**, *loving*	**amātūrus**, *about to love*	———
Passive voice.	———	[**amandus**, *to be loved*, 638]	**amātus**, *loved*
Deponents.	**ūtēns**, *using*	**ūsūrus**, *about to use*	**ūsus**, (*having used*,) *using*

646 The Tenses of the Participle, like those of the Infinitive (632), have no independent time of their own, but a time which depends on the verb they modify :

sōl oriēns diem cōnficit, *the sun* (*by*) *rising brings on the day.*
Platō scrībēns mortuus est, *Plato died* (*while*) *writing.*
Homērus fuit ante Rōmam conditam, *Homer lived before Rome* (*had been*) *founded.*

647 The Perfect Participles of Deponents and Semi-Deponents often have the force of Present Participles in English :

iīsdem ducibus ūsus, *using the same guides.*

648 The Participle, acting as a Verb, governs other words in the same manner as a Finite Verb :

amāns glōriam, *loving glory.*
miserīs succurrēns, *relieving the wretched.*

649 The Participle, acting as an Adjective, is Attributive and Predicate.

650 1. Attributive :

homo adultus, *a grown man.*
māter amāta, *a beloved mother.*

Like other Adjectives, it is also used as a Noun :

amantēs, *lovers.* **nātus,** *son* (literally, *born*).
docēns discentem, discēns docentem adjuvat, *a teacher helps a learner, and a learner a teacher.*

651 2. Predicate ; often with the force of a subordinate clause.

Purpose :

vēnērunt legiōnem oppūgnātūrī, *they came to attack the legion.*

Time:

Platō scrībēns mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.*

Cause:

moveor tālī amīcō orbātus, *I am distressed because bereaved of such a friend.*

Condition:

reluctante nātūrā, inritus labor est, *if nature opposes, effort is useless.*

Concession:

mortālis nātus spērās immortālia, *though mortal-born, thou hopest for the immortal.*

652 For the Participle in the Ablative Absolute see **397, 399.**

THE SUPINE

653 There are two Supines, one in **-um** and one in **-ū**. They are verbal nouns.

654 The Supine in **-um** expresses Purpose after verbs of Motion:

spectātum veniunt, *they come to see.*
lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, *they send envoys to ask help.*

655 The Supine in **-ū** is used as an ablative of Specification after adjectives and **fās, nefās, opus**:

mīrābile dictū, *wonderful to say.*
sī hōc fās est dictū, *if it be right to say so.*

VI. THE USES OF ADVERBS

656 Adverbs (240) usually modify Verbs, sometimes Adjectives or Adverbs, and rarely Nouns:

lātē vagārī, *to roam widely.*
lātē diffūsa, *wide-spread.*
minus lātē, *less widely.*
lātē rēx, *a ruler far and wide.*
bis morī, *to die twice.*
bis tīnctus, *twice dyed.*
bis tantum, *twice as far.*
bis cōnsul, *twice consul.*

657 The Adverb preferably stands just before the word it modifies:

sī ita putārem, levius dolērem, *if I thought so, I should grieve less.*
haud ita māgnus, *not so great.*

658 This order may be altered, especially for emphasis:

quod, etsī saepe dictum est, dīcendum est tamen saepius, *this, though often said, must still be said yet oftener.*

Negative Adverbs

659 nōn is the general negative, both for words and sentences.

nē is always *prohibitive*, and is especially used in negative commands or wishes.

haud negatives single words, usually adjectives or adverbs.

quem nōn amat, nōn amat, *whom she loves not, she loves not.*
haec nōn māgna rēs est, *this is not a great matter.*
nē flē, *weep not!*
nē eās, *don't go!*
haud malus, *not bad.*
haud male, *not badly.*

NOTE: The restricting negative **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, always encloses a word or expression to be emphasized:

nē in occultō quidem, *not even in secret.*

660 Two negatives usually cancel each other and make an affirmative:

nōn possum nōn cōnfitērī, *I must confess.*
nēmō negat, *nobody denies = everybody admits.*

661 Notice also these affirmatives:

Indefinite—**nōn** first:		Universal—**nōn** second:	
nōn nēmō	*somebody*	**nēmō nōn**	*everybody*
nōn nihil	*something*	**nihil nōn**	*everything*
nōn numquam	*sometimes*	**numquam nōn**	*always*

662 But when such negatives as **nōn, nēmō, nihil, numquam, nōn modo nōn**, are followed by **nē . . . quidem, nōn . . . nōn, nec . . . nec**, the sentence remains negative:

nōn praetermittam nē illud quidem, *not even that will I fail to mention.*
nēmō umquam nec poëta nec ōrātor fuit, quī quemquam meliōrem quam sē putāret, *never was there orator or poet, who thought any one better than himself.*

NOTE: In such sentences **nōn modo** is sometimes used with the full negative force of **nōn modo nōn**:

nōn modo dēfessō, sed nē sauciō quidem, *not only not for the wearied, but not even for the wounded.*

663 **neque (nec)**, *and not*, with an affirmative word is preferred to **et** with a negative:

nec quisquam, *and nobody* **nec ūllus**, *and no (one)*
nec quidquam, *and nothing* **nec umquam**, *and never*
neque autem ego sum ita dēmēns, *and, moreover, I am not so silly.*

APPENDIX

ORDER OF WORDS

I. GRAMMATICAL ORDER

664 In the plain or grammatical order of a Latin sentence

1. The Subject comes first and the Predicate last:

legiō | vēnit, *the legion | arrived.*

2. Modifiers of the Subject *accompany* the Subject:

decima legiō | vēnit, *the tenth legion | came.*
Cicerō cōnsul | rem pūblicam servāvit, *Cicero the consul | saved the republic.*

3. Modifiers of the Predicate *precede* the Predicate:

Cicerō | rem pūblicam servāvit, *Cicero | saved the republic.*

665 Modifiers of the Predicate naturally come in the following order: Adverbial constructions, Indirect Object, Direct Object, Adverbs.

A complete example is:

decima legiō ‖ per tribūnōs mīlitum | eī | grātiās | statim | ēgit, *the tenth legion ‖ at once returned thanks to him through their military tribunes.*

ORDER OF SINGLE WORDS

1. *Nouns*

666 Genitives usually follow the words they modify:

pater patriae, *father of his country.*
avidus glōriae, *eager for glory.*
satis pecūniae, *enough money.*

Appositives usually follow:

Hērodotus pater historiae, *Herodotus, the father of history.*

When the Appositive is a *place*, it often precedes:

urbs Rōma, mōns Jura, flūmen Rhēnus.

2. *Adjectives*

667 Adjectives precede or follow.

The common adjectives more frequently precede:

bonus homo; longa diēs.

Adjectives of number and quantity usually precede:

duo mīlia passuum, *two thousand paces, two miles.*
multōs annōs, (*for*) *many years.*
ūllō modō, *in any way.*

Ordinals usually follow: **hōra tertia**, *the third hour.*

3. *Pronouns*

668 Demonstratives precede, Possessives follow:

ille liber, *that book* **liber meus**, *my book*
hōrum omnium, *of all these* **fīlius suus**, (*his*) *own son*

Relatives and Interrogatives regularly stand first in their clauses, but a Preposition may precede them:

pōns, quī erat ad Genāvam, *the bridge which was near Geneva.*
quid suī cōnsiliī sit, ostendit, *he shows what his plan is.*
ad quārum initium silvārum, *at the entrance of these woods.*

4. *Adverbs*

669 Adverbs regularly precede (657):

bene est, *it is well.* **minus facile**, *less easily.*
paulō post, *a little after.*

5. *Prepositions*

670 The Preposition precedes the noun or phrase it governs:

in Ītaliam, *into Italy.*
in eōrum potestātem, *into their power.*
in commūnem omnium salūtem, *for the common safety of all.*

Short Prepositions (mostly of one syllable) may be put between the noun and its modifier:

māgnā cum laude, *with high praise.*
quam ob rem, *wherefore.*

6. *Conjunctions*

671 Conjunctions precede the expressions to which they belong.

But **-que**, *and*, **quoque**, *also*, **quidem**, *indeed*, **dēmum**, *at length*, follow: **tū quoque**, *you too!*

autem, enim, igitur, take the second place in the sentence, or, when **est** or **sunt** are added, they often take the third place:

cīvitātī autem imperium provinciae pollicētur, *to the assembly, however, he promises dominion over the province.*
nihil est igitur, *there is nothing, then, . . .*

ORDER OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

672 A subordinate clause is used like a Noun, an Adjective, or an Adverb. See **498–501**. Accordingly it is placed in the order which corresponds to its construction:

quod rediit | mīrābile vidētur, *that he returned seems marvelous.*

Substantive Clause (**549**); Subject of **vidētur**.

Caesar | quid suī cōnsiliī sit | ostendit, *Caesar shows what his plan is.*

Substantive Clause; Object of **ostendit**.

fundus | quī est in agrō Sabīnō | meus est, *the farm, which is in the Sabine region, is mine.*

Attributive Clause; modifies **fundus**.

sī peccāvī | īgnōsce, *if I have done wrong, forgive me.*

Adverbial Clause; modifies **īgnōsce**.

II. RHETORICAL ORDER

673 The plain or grammatical order is very often changed, especially to make some part of the sentence emphatic. This changed order is called the Rhetorical order.

Examples of Changed Order

674 Subject emphatic:

erat in Galliā ulteriōre ūna legiō, *there was in farther Gaul* JUST ONE LEGION.

Object emphatic:

tē ut ūlla rēs frangat, *anything break* YOU *down!*

Predicate first:

fuit Īlium, *Troy* IS NO MORE.

jacta est ālea, *the die* IS CAST.

varia sunt hominum jūdicia, *VARIOUS are the judgments of men.*

Appositive first:

duae urbēs potentissimae, Carthāgō atque Numantia, *TWO MOST MIGHTY CITIES, Carthage and Numantia.*

Genitive first:

quantō latius officiōrum patet quam jūris rēgula, *how much more widely extends the rule* OF DUTY *than (the rule)* OF LAW.

Demonstrative last: **Platō ille**, *the great Plato.*

Adjective emphatic:

aliud iter habēbant nūllum, *other way they had* NONE.

Adverbial phrase emphatic:

intrā moenia sunt hostēs, *WITHIN THE WALLS are our foes!*

Three emphatic words: Object, Adverb, Genitive:

īram bene Ennius initium dīxit īnsāniae, *it was* ANGER *Ennius so* WELL *named the beginning of* MADNESS, instead of the plain matter-of-fact
Ennius īram initium īnsāniae bene dīxit, *Ennius well named anger the beginning of madness.*

675 Notice the following special ways of securing emphasis:

Anáphora or Repetition in the same order:

Scīpiō Carthāginem dēlēvit, Scīpiō Numantiam sustulit, Scīpiō cīvitātem servāvit, *Scipio destroyed Carthage, Scipio razed Numantia, Scipio saved the state.*

Chiásmus ("criss-cross") or Transposition:

meminī praeteritōrum, praesentia cernō, *I remember the past; the present I behold.*

676 For the sake of Clearness subordinate expressions are very often inserted in the clauses to which they belong:

brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus, *the shortest crossing into Britain.*

677 The order of words in the following fixed expressions is never changed:

populus Rōmānus, cīvis Rōmānus, etc.	**terrā marīque**
senātus populusque Rōmānus	**domī mīlitiaeque**
tribūnus plēbis, tribūnus mīlitum, etc.	**meā sponte**
Jūpiter optimus māximus	

PROSODY

678 Poetry differs from Prose in having a *regular* swing, or Rhythm (from the Greek **rhythmos**, *beat, throb*).

679 In Latin this swing or rhythm comes from the regular recurring of long and short syllables, and not from the accent of the separate words as in English.

Thus in the English lines

Márching alóng, fífty score strong,
Gréat-hearted géntlemen, sínging this song,

the word-accent settles the rhythm.

680 But in Latin poetry the word-accent is disregarded, and *the quantity of the syllables*, as long or short, settles the rhythm.

Thus in the Latin hexameter ("six-foot") line,

– ◡ ◡ | – – | – – | – – | – ◡ ◡ | – –
parturi|unt mon|tēs, nā|scētur | rīdicu|lus mūs,

the separate word-accents are as follows (**38–40**):

partúriunt móntēs, nāscétur rīdículus mūs,

But the line is not to be read by word-accent. It is to be read by the verse-accent of the six feet which compose it. In this line the verse-accent goes with the first long syllable of each foot, as follows:

´ ◡ ◡ | ´ – | ´ – | ´ – | ´ ◡ ◡ | ´ –
parturi|unt mon|tēs, nā|scētur | rīdicu|lus mūs.

[Notice that final syllables are made long by position before two consonants, even when the latter consonant is in the following word.]

English verse is thus said to be Accentual and Latin verse Quantitative.

681 The Quantity of Syllables and their combination in Verse of different Metres are the two parts of Prosody.

I. QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

682 The general rules for the quantity of syllables, including words of one syllable, have been given. See 32–37.

Natural Quantity of Final Syllables

I. ENDING IN A VOWEL

683 Final **a**, **e**, **y**, are short; final **i**, **o**, **u**, are long:
portă, **amātĕ**, **misў**; **bonī**, **bonō**, **cornū**.

EXCEPTIONS

684 Final **ā**: Ablative Singular First Declension: **portā**.
Imperative First Conjugation: **amā**.
Indeclinable words as **intereā**, **trīgintā**, **contrā**.
But **ită**, **quiă**.

685 Final **ē**: Ablative Singular Fifth Declension: **diē**.
Imperative Second Conjugation: **monē**.
But sometimes **cavĕ**, **valĕ**, **vidĕ**.
Adverbs from Adjectives of Second Declension: **rēctē**. But **benĕ**, **malĕ**.

686 Final **ĭ**: **nisĭ**, **quasĭ**.

Final **ī̆**: **mihī̆**, **tibī̆**, **sibī̆**, **ibī̆**, **ubī̆**.

Notice the quantity of **i** in the compounds
ibīdem, **ibīque**, **ubīque**,
ubĭnam, **ubĭvīs**, **ubĭcumque**, **utĭnam**, **sīcutĭ**.

687 Final **ŏ**: **duŏ**, **citŏ**, **egŏ**, **modŏ** and its compounds (**dummodŏ**).
Rarely in Verbs and Third Declension Nouns: **amŏ**, **virgŏ**.

II. ENDING IN A CONSONANT

688 Final Syllables ending in any consonant or consonants, except s, are short:

amăt, amănt, amābĭt, amantŭr, amĕm.

Exceptions

689 The adverbs illīc, illūc, istīc, istūc.
Compounds of pār: dispār, impār.

Final Syllables in s

690 Final as, es, os, are long; final is, us, ys, are short:

amās, monēs, bonōs; canĭs, bonŭs, chlamўs.

Exceptions

691 Final ĕs: Nominative of Third Declension Nouns with Genitive in -ĕtis, -ĭtis, -ĭdis: segĕs (segĕtis), mīlĕs (mīlĭtis), obsĕs (obsĭdis).
But abiēs, ariēs, pariēs.
Compounds of ĕs, *be*: abĕs, adĕs, potĕs.
The Preposition penĕs.

692 Final ŏs: compŏs.

693 Final īs: Dative and Ablative Plural: puerīs, bonīs, vōbīs.
Accusative Plural: partīs, omnīs.
Some proper nouns increasing in the Genitive: Quirīs (Quirītis), Samnīs (Samnītis).
Second Person Singular of Present Indicative Active in Fourth Conjugation: audīs.
The verbal forms īs, fīs, sīs, vīs, velīs, nōlīs, mālīs, and their compounds, as adsīs, quamvīs, possīs.
The noun vīs, *force*.

694 Final **ūs**: Fourth Declension forms, except Nominative and Vocative Singular: **frūctūs**.

Nominative of Third Declension Nouns with Genitive in **-ūtis, -ūdis, -ūris**: **virtūs (virtūtis), palūs (palūdis), tellūs (tellūris)**.

695 Greek nouns (**63, 72, 91, 92**) usually keep their quantities unchanged in Latin.

Thus **Aenēā, poĕmă, Tempē, Dīdō, Aenēās, Pallăs, Anchīsēs, Parĭs, Simoīs, Dēlŏs, hērōs, āēr.**

II. VERSE AND METRE

696 A Verse, or line of poetry, is a series of long and short syllables arranged in a fixed order.

697 The unit of measure is the Foot, or least group of syllables arranged under one verse-accent.

A foot usually has two or three syllables, never more than four.

698 The feet most used in Latin poetry are:

Dactyl ("forefinger"),	long and two short	– ⏑ ⏑
Spondee,	two long	– –
Trochee,	long and short	– ⏑
Iambus,	short and long	⏑ –

699 A long syllable is treated as equal to two short (– = ⏑ ⏑). Hence the Dactyl (– ⏑ ⏑), for example, is equal in Quantity to the Spondee (– –).

700 A Foot has two parts; the Thesis, or syllable which has the rhythmical beat called the Ictus, and the Arsis, or unaccented part.

Thesis means "setting down" the foot, as in marching. Arsis means "lifting" or "raising." The Ictus is marked by a stroke, as follows:

Dactyl with Ictus on Thesis, ˊ ◡ ◡

Spondee with Ictus on Thesis, ˊ –

701 Metre means measure. The metre of any verse means the *number* and *kind* of feet which, taken in their proper order, measure the Verse. Thus Dactylic Hexameter is the metre consisting of six Dactyls (or their equivalents) arranged in a certain order:

ármă vĭ|rūmquĕ că|nō Trō|jāe quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōrīs.

NOTE: The long and short marks *used in scanning* indicate the long and short *syllables.*

702 A verse lacking part of the last foot is Catalectic ("leaving off"). A complete verse is Acatalectic ("not leaving off"). The last syllable of every verse may be either long or short (⏑).

Scanning

703 The reading of a Verse according to its Metre is called Scanning. Care must be taken *to read the words unbroken,* while observing the quantities, ictus and caesura. The following points should also be noticed:

704 The Caesūra (‖) is a slight pause for reading which divides the verse. It always occurs within a Foot and at the end of a word (**713, 714**). The pause which occurs when the Foot and word end together is called Diaéresis (#):

ármă vĭ|rūmquĕ că|nō ‖ Trō|jae quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōrīs. (Caesura.)

ītĕ dŏ|mūm sătŭ|rae vĕnĭt | Hēspĕrŭs # ītĕ că|pellae. (Diaeresis.)

A Caesura *between the thesis and arsis* of the foot is called Masculine. A Caesura *in the arsis* of the foot is Feminine.

705 Elision ("crushing out") is the slurring or obscuring of a final vowel or diphthong, or syllable ending in **m**, before a word beginning with a vowel or **h**. This is regular in Latin poetry. In scanning it is desirable to give a faint sound to the elided syllable:

mōnstr[um] hōr|rēnd[um] īn|fōrm[e] īn|gēns, cūī | lūmĕn ăd|ēmptŭm.

In Elision **est**, *is*, loses the **e**: **dictum est** = **dictumst**.

Elision at the end of a line is called Synapheía ("binding").

706 In some instances the two successive separate vowels are sounded without Elision. This is called Hiátus. It is usual before or after an Interjection:

ō ēt | dē Lătĭ|ā, ō | ēt dē | gēntĕ Să|bīnā.

The following are less common:

707 Synizésis ("sitting together") or Synaéresis ("taking together") is the blending of two vowels into one long vowel:

deinde	= **dēinde**	**aurĕīs**	= **aurēis**
de[h]inc	= **dēinc**	**cŭī**	= **cūī**

708 Sýncŏpe ("cutting out") is the dropping of a short vowel between two consonants:

saec[u]lum = saeclum **repos[i]tum = repostum**

709 Diástŏle ("drawing out") is the lengthening of a short syllable before a caesura:

pēctŏrĭ|*būs* ĭnhĭ|āns spī|rāntĭă | cōnsŭlĭt | ēxtă.

710 Sýstŏle ("drawing together") is the shortening of a long syllable:

ōbstĭpŭ|ī stĕtĕ|rūntquĕ cŏ|m[ae] ēt vōx | faucĭbŭs | haesĭt.

711 Tmēsis ("cutting") is cutting a compound word in two:

quō nōs cunque feret fortūna.

Dactylic Hexameter

712 Dactylic Hexameter, also called Heroic Verse, is composed of six dactyls, partly replaced by spondees with the ictus of a dactyl. (´ ◡ ◡ = ´ –.)

The sixth or last foot is always a spondee and the fifth foot is generally a dactyl. The first four feet may be spondees or dactyls:

´ ◡◡ | ´ ◡◡ | ´ ◡◡ | ´ ◡◡ | ´ ◡◡ | ´ ‿

ŭt fŭgĭ|ŭnt ăquĭ|lās ‖ tĭmĭ|dĭssĭmă | tŭrbă cŏ|lŭmbae.
ārmă vĭ|rŭmquĕ că|nō ‖ Trō|jāē quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōrīs.
īll[ī] īn|tĕr sē|sē ‖ mā|gnā vī | brāchĭă | tōllŭnt.

A spondee may occur in the fifth foot. Such a verse is called Spondaic:

cūm sŏcĭ|īs nā|tōquĕ Pĕ|nātĭbŭs | ēt mā|gnīs Dīs.

713 The Caesura most commonly occurs in the third foot, and is Masculine (**704**):

ārmă vĭ|rŭmquĕ că|nō ‖ Trō|jāe quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōrīs.

Sometimes the Feminine caesura (**704**) is found:

īnfān|dŭm rē|gīnă ‖ jŭ|bēs rĕnŏ|vārĕ dŏ|lōrĕm.

714 The Caesura in the fourth foot is less frequent. When it occurs, there is usually another caesura in the second foot:

īndĕ tŏ|rō ‖ pătĕr | Aenē|ās ‖ sīc | ōrsŭs ăb | āltō.

715 The Diaeresis (also called the Bucolic Caesura) is sometimes found:

ītĕ dŏ|mūm sătŭ|rae vĕnīt | Hēspĕrŭs ‡‡ ītĕ că|pēllae.

Dactylic Pentameter

716 The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts, each composed of two and a half feet. The spondee may replace the dactyl in the first part, but not in the second. The last syllable of the first part always ends a word:

– ◡◡ | – ◡◡ | – || – ◡◡ | – ◡◡ | ×

717 Dactylic Pentameter is used only in combination with Dactylic Hexameter in the so-called Elégiac Distich, or couplet. Thus

dŏnĕc ĕ|rís fē|líx, ‖ mūl|tŏs nŭmĕ|rābĭs ă|mícōs;
tĕmpŏră | sí fŭĕ|rínt ‖ nŭbĭlă, | sŏlŭs ĕ|rĭs.

The following English elegiac couplet serves to illustrate the two metres:

Ín the Hexámeter ríses the foúntain's sílvery cólumn,
Ín the Pentámeter áye fálling in mélody báck.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

718 The twelve months are

Jānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Māius, Jūnius, Jūlius, Augustus, September, Octōber, November, December.

The old names for **Jūlius** and **Augustus** were **Quīntīlis** and **Sextīlis**, the *Fifth* and *Sixth* months, counting from March, originally the first month of the Roman year.

The names of months are Adjectives agreeing with **mēnsis**, *month*, understood.

719 The first day of the month is the Calends (**Kalendae**), the fifth the Nones (**Nōnae**), and

the thirteenth the Ides (Īdūs). But in March, May, July, October, the Nones and Ides came two days later. This may be remembered by the following table:

K.	1		
N.	5	7	MARCH, MAY
I.	13	15	JULY, OCTOBER

720 The days were *counted backward* from these three fixed points.

Thus January 1st is "*on the January Calends*," or **Kalendīs Jānuāriīs**, and December 31st is "*on the day before the January Calends*," or **prīdiē Kalendās Jānuāriās**. December 12th is "*on the day before the December Ides*," or **prīdiē Īdūs Decembrēs**. Notice that in *dates* **prīdiē** acts as a preposition and governs the Accusative. But see **348**.

721 "*Two days before*" is **ante diem tertium**, "*three days before*" is **ante diem quārtum**; and so on.

This counts one day more than we should expect. But the Romans *counted in* the day of the Calends, Nones, or Ides as the *first* day:

ante diem tertium Kalendās Jānuāriās, or **a. d. III Kal. Jān.** = *December 30th.*

ante diem quārtum Kalendās Jūniās, or **a. d. IV Kal. Jūn.** = *May 28th.*

722 **ante diem** (**tertium**, etc.) is indeclinable, and governs the Accusative.

It is sometimes used with the prepositions **ab**, **ex**, **in**:

ex a. d. III Kal., Jān. *from December 30th.*

723 *The Julian Calendar*

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, October. 31 days.	January, August, December. 31 days.	April, June, September, November. 30 days.	February. 28 (29) days.
1	KALENDĪS.	KALENDĪS.	KALENDĪS.	KALENDĪS.
2	VI. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Prīdiē Nōnās.	Prīdiē Nōnās.	Prīdiē Nōnās.
5	III. "	NŌNĪS.	NŌNĪS.	NŌNĪS.
6	Prīdiē Nōnās.	VIII. Īdūs.	VIII. Īdūs.	VIII. Idūs.
7	NŌNĪS.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Īdūs.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Prīdiē Īdūs.	Prīdiē Īdūs.	Prīdiē Īdūs.
13	III. "	ĪDIBUS.	ĪDIBUS.	ĪDIBUS.
14	Prīdiē Īdūs.	XIX. Kalendās.	XVIII. Kalendās	XVI. Kalendās.
15	ĪDIBUS.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Kalendās.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.) "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prīd. Kal. (III. Kal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prīd. Kal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Prīdiē Kalendās.	(*Bracketed forms*
31	Prīdiē Kalendās.	Prīdiē Kalendās.		*for leap-year.*)

724 The old Republican Calendar, replaced in 45 B.C. by the Julian Calendar, was based on a year of only 355 days—10 days less than the actual year. To make up this loss a short month, the **mēnsis intercalāris**, had been inserted every other year. The number of days in each of the regular twelve months was as follows: March, May, July, October, each 31 days; February, 28 days; *the other months, each 29 days.* Dates in Caesar, Cicero, and other writers before the time of the Julian Calendar, are to be read by the Republican Calendar.

725 The Roman day was the time from sunrise to sunset, the night from sunset to sunrise. An hour was the twelfth part of this day, which varied in length with the seasons. "Are there not twelve hours in the day?" was true of every Roman day, whether long or short. With sunrise at six o'clock, the approximate time of the Roman hours is as follows:

hōra prīma, *the first hour* = 6 to 7 A. M.
hōra secunda, *the second hour* = 7 to 8 A. M., and so on.
hōra ūndecima, *the eleventh hour* = 4 to 5 P. M.

Sometimes the divisions of the night were reckoned by hours. In such cases some word for *night* is usually expressed:

post prīmam hōram noctis, *after the first hour of the night* = after 7 P. M.
decem hōrīs nocturnīs, *in ten hours of the night.*

726 The night was divided into four watches of three hours each. With sunset at six o'clock, the approximate time of the Roman watches is:

vigilia prīma, 6 to 9 P. M.
vigilia secunda, 9 to midnight.
vigilia tertia, midnight to 3 A. M.
vigilia quārta, 3 to 6 A. M.

ROMAN NAMES

727 A Roman usually had three names:

1. **praenōmen**, personal or "given" name, as **Gāius**.
2. **nōmen**, name of **gēns** or clan, as **Jūlius**.
3. **cōgnōmen**, name of **familia** or family, as **Caesar**.

The **nōmen** nearly always ends in **-ius**. Every **praenōmen** may be abbreviated.

728 COMMON ABBREVIATIONS

1. *Personal Names*

A. = Aulus.
App. = Appius.
C. = Gāius.
Cn. = Gnaeus.
D. = Decimus.
K. = Kaesō.
L. = Lūcius.
M. = Mārcus.
M'. = Mānius.
Mam. = Māmercus.
N. = Numerius.
P. = Pūblius.
Q. or Qu. = Quīntus.
S. or Sex. = Sextus.
Ser. = Servius.
Sp. = Spurius.
T. = Titus.
Ti. or Tib. = Tiberius.

2. *Official and Miscellaneous*

A. U. C. = annō urbis conditae.
= ab urbe conditā.
Aed. = aedīlis.
Cos. = cōnsul.
Coss. = cōnsulēs.
D. = dīvus.
Des. = dēsīgnātus.
D. M. = dīs mānibus.
F. = fīlius.
Id. = īdūs.
Imp. = imperātor.
K., Kal. = Kalendae.
Leg. = lēgātus.
Non = Nōnae.
O. M. = optimus māximus.
P. C. = patrēs cōnscrīptī.
P. R. = populus Rōmānus.
Pont. Max. = pontifex māximus.
Pr. = praetor.
Praef. = praefectus.
Proc. = prōcōnsul.
Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod bonum fēlīx faustumque sit.
Quir. = Quirītēs.
Resp. = rēs pūblica.
S. = senātus.
S. C. = senātūs cōnsultum.
S. D. P. = salūtem dīcit plūrimam.
S. P. Q. R. = senātus populusque Rōmānus.
Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plēbis.

THE ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

I. LATIN WORDS USED AS ENGLISH

729 The multitude of English words derived from Latin includes some which have been taken over without change of form, though often with change of meaning. Such, for example, are *circus*, *omnibus*, *item*, *tandem*, *extra*. They have become English words with English sounds. Such also are all personal, geographical, and official Latin names which occur in our language in their original form, as *Julius Caesar*, *Cicero*, *Juno*, *Minerva*; *Sarmatia*, *Scythia*, *Verona*; *dictator*, *consul*, *censor*, *praetor*.

These are freely used, especially in poetry. Thus Milton writes:

"From *Gallia*, *Gades*, and the British west."

"Canst thou not remember
Quintius, *Fabricius*, *Curius*, *Regulus?*"

730 Latin words, short phrases, learned terms, and maxims in familiar use are almost naturalized as part of our language, and are therefore properly pronounced as English. Examples are seriatim, excelsior, in memoriam, vice versa, ex officio, bona fide, habeas corpus, e pluribus unum, nil desperandum.

II. THE ENGLISH METHOD

731 According to the English method, now no longer in general use, all Latin words are sounded as English. Thus pater is sounded *páy-ter*, mihi is *mý-high*, otium is *óh-she-um*, grave is *gráyv*. It is difficult to state this method in simple form, because of the inconsistencies which are to be found even in the best English usage. The following rules, however, embody the essentials:

I. VOWELS

732 An *accented* syllable ending in a vowel always preserves the long English sound of the vowel.

The vowels in the accented syllables are sounded as follows:

má-re	dé-us	ví-ta	tó-tus	mú-sa	Tý-rus
Má-ry	*dé*-ist	*ví*-tal	*tó*-tal	*mú*-sic	*tý*-rant

733 An *unaccented* syllable ending in a vowel has a less distinct and shorter sound:

á-re-a	má-re	dú-bi-us	só-lo	ú-su
áre*a*	Má*ry*	dú*bi*ous	só*lo*	yoú *sue*

But final **i**, except in **tibi**, **sibi**, keeps the long sound. Thus **tóti** = *tów tie*.

734 A syllable ending in a consonant preserves the short English sound of the vowel. The short vowels in such syllables are sounded as follows:

hanc	tes-tis	fin-do	hoc	tus-sis	cygnus
hank	*tes*-ty	*win*-dow	*hock*	*tus*-sle	*sig*-nal

735 The following exceptions occur:

a, before one **r**, as in *art*: **parte** = *party*.
qua, before **dr**, **rt**, as in *quadrant*, *quarter*.
Final **es** as in *ease*: **rupes** = *rúpees*.
Final **os** as in *dose*: **tardos** = *tár dose*.
er, **ir**, **yr**, ending a word or syllable, as in *her*, *fir*, *myrrh*.

Thus **fer**, **fer-vens**, **vir**, **vir-tus**, **myr-tus**.

736

II. DIPHTHONGS

ae and **oe** = *ee*: **taeter** = *teeter*, **foedus** = *feed us*.
au = *aw*: **laus** = *laws*.
eu = *ew*: **heu** = *hew*.
ei = *i*: **hei** = *high*.
ui = *ui*: **quin** as in *quince*.

But **cui** and **huic** may be sounded *ki* and *hike*.

737 When the combinations **ai, ei, oi, yi,** are accented and also followed by a vowel, the **i** is joined in sound to the following vowel:

Maí-a = *Máy-ya*	**Pompeí-us** = *Pompé-yus*
Troí-a = *Tró-ya*	**Harpyí-a** = *Harpý-ya*

738 **u** before a vowel is often sounded as *w*.

This is always the case after **q**, and sometimes after **g** or **s**:

suadeo = *sway-deo*	**qui** = *kwy*
queror = *kweé-ror*	**quod** = *kwŏd*

III. CONSONANTS

739 Notice especially the following:

c before **e, i, y,** is like *s*: **Cicero** = *Sísero.*

ch is always like *k*: **charta** = *kár-tah.*

ci, when unaccented and before a vowel = *sh*(*e*): **socius** = *só-she-us.*

g before **e, i, y,** is like *j*: **eget** = *eé-jet,* **egit** = *eé-jit.*

s is usually sharp, as in *this*: **dandos** = *dándose.*

si, when unaccented and before a vowel = *sh*, or sometimes *zh.*

Thus: **confessio,** as in *confession* (*sh*).
confusio, as in *confusion* (*zh*).

ti, when unaccented and before a vowel = *sh*: **ratio** = *ratio.*

x beginning a word = *z*: **Xer-xes** = *Zúr-zees.*

FIGURES OF SPEECH

740 Figures are variations from the plain form of statement.

Ellípsis (*leaving out*) is the omission of one or more words:

nē quid nimis, (*do*) *nothing in excess.*

Pléonasm (*excess*) is the use of more words than are needed:

diem dīcunt, quō diē conveniant, *they set a day on which* (*day*) *to assemble.*

Zeúgma (*yoking*) is the joining of two or more words in dependence on a word which strictly governs only one of them.

pācem an bellum gerēns, (*making*) *peace or waging war.*

Hendíadys (*one by two*) is the statement of one idea by means of two words joined by a conjunction:

vī et armīs, *by force of arms.*

Prolépsis (*taking before*) is the introduction of a noun or participle before the construction which explains it:

rem vidēs, quōmodo sē habeat, *you see how the matter stands.*

Hypállagē (*interchange*) is exchange of construction in words without changing the sense:

fulva leōnis īra, *the lion's tawny rage = the tawny lion's rage.*

Hýsteron Próteron (*last first*) is reversal of the natural order of two expressions:

moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus, *let us rush into the midst of battle and die.*

Hypérbaton (*stepping over*) is transposition :

per tē deōs ōrō, *by the gods, I pray you.*

"With a violent hyperbaton to transpose the text."—MILTON.

Oxymŏron (*clever fooling*) is seeming contradiction :

absentēs adsunt, (*though*) *absent, they are here.*

Synécdochē (*give and take*) is the use of part for whole, whole for part, material for thing made, and so on :

Thus : tectum for domus mīles for mīlitēs
elephantus for ebur ferrum for gladius

Hypérbolē (*overshooting*) is exaggeration :

nive candidior, *whiter than snow.*

Lĭtŏtēs (*lessening*) is understatement. It is common with negatives :

haud malus, *not bad = good.*

A Símile (*likeness*) is a direct statement that one thing is *like* another :

ōs deō similis, (*he was*) *like a god in countenance.*

A Métaphor (*transfer*) is a compressed Simile :

Fabius scūtum Rōmānōrum fuit, Mārcellus gladius, *Fabius was the shield of Rome, Marcellus her sword.*

Metónomy (*change of name*) is the use of a word to represent another of like meaning :

Mārs = bellum, argentum = pecūnia, Volcānus = īgnis.

For Anáphora and Chiásmus see 675.
For Figures of Prosody see 705–711.

The numbers refer to sections

ā, ab, abs, 34, 243, 244, 319, 337, 378–79, 639.4.
ab-, 377.
abdō, 211.1.
abiciō, 213.2.
absque, 243.
abstergeō, 205.
ac, 248.
ac sī, 567.
accēdit, 233.3.
accendō, 211.3.
accidit, 233.3.
accipiō, 213.2.
ācer, 114, 122.
acquīrō, 209.
ācriter, 235.2, 238.2.
āctum est, 233.3.
agnō, 193, 213.1.
acus, 94, 96.
ad, 34, 242, 311, 325.1, 332, 639.3.
adeō, 528.
-adēs, 264.4.
adipīscor, 215.
advenīō, 219.2.
adversum, 242.
adversus, 242.
aedēs, 84.1, 101.
aegrē, 537.
Aenēās, 36.1, 63.
aequor, 79, 88.1.
āēr, 36.1.
aes, 88.2.
aetās, 77.
-aeus, 267.7.
afferō, 226.
ager, 66.
āgnōscō, 214.1.
agō, 195, 211.2.
āiō, 232.
alacer, 128.
alacrior, 128.
alicubi, 240.2.
allī, 438.
aliqua, 150.
aliquī, 149.
aliquis, 149, 431.
-ālis, 267.2.
alius, 112, 151, 425.2, 436, 437.
alīus, 112.
allicīō, 182.2.
alō, 210.
Alpēs, 102.2.
altē, 238.1.
alter, 112, 151, 425.2, 436, 437.
alterīus, 112.
altus, 120.
alvus, 68.
amandus, -a, -um, 167.3.
amandus sum, 188.
amāns, 116, 121, 167.3.
amanter, 235.2.
amārim, 189.
amārunt, 189.
amāssem, 189.
amāstī, 189.
amātūrus, -a, -um, 167.3, 191.
amātūrus sum, 188.
amātus, -a, -um, 167.3, 191.
ambi-, 246.
ambīre, 246.
ambō, 131, 439.
amō, 171, 174, 175, 193, 199.
amplector, 215.
amplius, 382.
an, 34, 240.5, 595.
Anchīsēs, 63.
Androgeōs, 72.
angō, 212.
angustiae, 102.3.
animal, 83.
anne, 240.5.
annōn, 240.5.
ante, 242, 311, 332.
antequam, 256, 534.
antīquitus, 237.3.
anus, 94.
-ānus, 267.2, 267.5, 267.7.
apage, 262.
aperiō, 217.
apud, 242.
arbor, 81, 88.1.
arceō, 204.1.
arcessō, 209.
arcus, 96.
ārdeō, 205.
Argīs, 69.
arguō, 213.1.
ariēs, 89.1.
-āris, 267.2.
-ārium, 264.2.
-ārius, 267.2.
arma, 102.3.
ars, 84.2.
artūs (pl.), 96.
arx, 84.2.
ās, 89.1.
-ās, 267.7.
ascendō, 211.3.
asper, 111.
aspiciō, 213.2.

assentior, 220.
assuēfaciō, 213.2.
at, 34, 250, 561.2.
Athēnae, 102.2.
Athēnīs, 61.
Atlās, 92.
atque, 248.
atquī, 250.
audeō, 187, 207, 626.
audiō, 171, 180, 181, 193, 216.
audīsse, 189.
audīstī, 189.
auferō, 226.
aufugere, 246.
augeō, 205.
aulāī, 62.
aut, 249.
aut . . . aut, 249.
autem, 250, 671.
auxilia, 104.
-āx, 269.4.
axis, 89.2.

bellī, 403.
bellum, 65.
bene, 239.
benevolus, 124.
-bilis, 269.3.
bīnī, 132.
bis, 34, 132.
bonus, 108, 125.
bōs, 85.
-bulum, 266.4.
-bundus, 269.1.

cadō, 211.1.
caedēs, 84.1.
caedō, 211.1.
caelicolūm, 62.
caelum, -ī, 105.3.
calcar, 83.
calefaciō, 213.2.
calix, 89.4.
calx, 84.2.
canis, 82.
canō, 211.1.
capiō, 182, 183, 184, 213.2.
carbasus, 68.
cardō, 89.6.
careō, 204.1.
carō, 86, 88.1.
carpō, 208.1.
castra, 104.
causā, 349, 639.1.
cavē, 496.3, 504.2.
caveō, 206.2.
-ce, 34.
cēdō, 208.2.
celer, 114.
cēnseō, 204.2.
centum, 131, 132.
cernō, 209.
certē, 236.2, 282.1, 569.
certō, 236.2.
cēterī, 436, 438.
cēterum, 250.
cieō, 203.
cingō, 208.1.
circā, 242.
circiter, 242.
circum, 242, 311.
circumsistō, 211.1.
cis, 34, 242.
citerior, 126.1.
citimus, 126.1.
citrā, 242.
clādēs, 84.1.
clam, 237.1, 270.
clāmor, 81.
clandestīnus, 270.
claudō, 208.2.
claudō, 212.
clāvis, 82.
cliēns, 84.3.
clipeus, -um, 105.1.
coëmō, 211.2.
coepī, 230.
coërceō, 204.1.
cōgitō, 626.
cōgnōscō, 214.1.
cōgō, 33.1, 211.2, 629.
cohors, 84.3.
colligō, 211.2.
collis, 89.2.
colō, 210.
color, 81.
colus, 68, 94, 106.
comminīscor, 215.
comperiō, 219.1.
complēō, 203.
con, 311, 332.
concutiō, 213.2.
cōnferō, 226.
cōnfiteor, 207.
cōnor, 626.
cōnserō, 210.
cōnsistō, 211.1.
cōnspiciō, 213.2.
cōnstituō, 213.1.
cōnsuēscō, 214.1.
cōnsul, 79.
cōnsulō, 210.
contrā, 242.
cōpiae, 104.
coquō, 208.1.
cor, 34, 88.1.
cōram, 243.
cornū, 93.
corpus, 81.
crās, 270.
crāstinus, 270.
crēdō, 211.1.
crēscō, 214.1.
-crum, 266.4.
crūs, 89.3.
cubīle, 83.
cucurrī, 195.
-culum, 266.4.
-culus (-a, -um), 264.1.
cum (conj.), 240.3, 256, 257, 258, 535-540, 542, 571, 581.2.
cum (prep.), 243, 244, 390, 391, 392.
cum prīmum, 530.
-cumque, 582.
cum . . . tum, 248.
cunctor, 626.
-cundus, 269.1.
cupiō, 182.1, 213.2, 626, 629.
curritur, 233.3.
currō, 195, 211.1.

dā, dāns, dās, 201.
dat, 34.
dē, 243, 319, 337, 639.4.
dea, 62.
dēbeō, 204.1, 626.
dēcernō, 209, 626.
decet, 233.2.
dēdecet, 233.2.
dēdecus, 274.2.

dēfendō, 211.3.
dēficiō, 197.3.
dēleō, 193, 203.
dēlēstī, 189.
dēligō, 211.2.
Dēlos, 72.
dēmēns, 275.3.
dēmō, 211.2.
dēns, 84.2, 89.5.
dēscrō, 210.
dēsinō, 209, 626.
dēterior, 126.1.
dēterrimus, 126.1.
deus, 71.
dexter, 111.
dī-, 246.
dīc, 190.
dīcō, 208.1.
Dīdō, 92.
diēs, 97, 98.
differō, 226.
difficilis, 123.
dīgnus, 396, 588.3.
dīligō, 211.2.
dīmicō, 200.
dirimō, 211.2.
dīripiō, 213.2.
dīruō, 213.1.
dis-, 246, 377.
discō, 214.1, 626.
dissimilis, 123.
distinēre, 246.
diū, 239, 447.2.
diūtissimē, 239.
diūtius, 239.
dīves, 117.
dīvidō, 208.2.
dīvitiae, 102.3.
dō, 201.1.
-dō, 211.1.
doceō, 204.2, 626.
doleō, 204.1.
dolor, 81.
domī, 55, 69, 95, 403.
domum, 325.2.
domus, 94, 95, 106.3.
dōnec, 256, 533.
dōs, 88.1.
dubitō, 626.
dūc, 190.
ducentī, 131, 132.
dūcō, 194, 208.1.
dum, 34, 256, 259, 447.1, 533, 563.
dummodo, 259, 563.
dum nē, 565.
duo, 130, 131.
dux, 78.
dūxī, 194.

ē, ex, 243, 244, 337, 378, 639.4.
ecce, 262.
ecquis, 149.
ēdī, 195.
edō, 195, 211.2, 221, 223.
efferō, 226.
effugiō, 213.2.
egēnus, 124.
egeō, 204.1.
ēgī, 195.
ego, 137, 153, 61C.
ēheu, 262.
eho, 262.
-ēis, 264.4.
ējus modī, 528, 588.
-ellus (-a, -um), 264.1.
ēmineō, 204.1.
emō, 197.1, 211.2.
ēn, 262.
enim, 252, 671.
ēnsis, 89.2.
-ēnsis, 267.2, 267.7.
eō, 221, 229.
eō (abl.), 518.
epitomē, 63.
epulum, -ae, 105.3.
ergā, 242.
ergō, 251.
ēripiō, 197.4.
-ernus, 270.
es, 34, 173.
ēs, 34, 223.
ēsse, ēssētur, 223.
ēst, ēstur, 223.
-ester, 267.2.
est quī, 588.2.
et, 34, 248, 288.5.
et . . . et, 248.
etenim, 252.
etiam, 240.6, 248, 282.1.
etiamsī, 572.
etsī, 258, 572.
-ētum, 264.2.
euge, 262; euoe, 262.
-eus, 267.1.
exerceō, 204.1.
experior, 220.
exterī, 126.2.
exterior, 126.2.
extimus, 126.2.
extrā, 242.
extrēmus, 126.2, 416.

fac, 34, 190, 496.3, 504.2.
facere nōn possum, 579.
faciō, 182.1, 197.3, 213.2.
facile, 238.3.
facilis, 123.
fallō, 211.1.
falsissimus, 127.
falsus, 127.
famēs, 106.4.
familiās, 62.
fās, 100, 655.
fascis, 89.2.
fateor, 207.
faveō, 206.2.
fel, 34.
fēlīciter, 235.2, 238.1.
fēlīx, 116, 120.
fer, 34, 190.
ferō, 221, 224, 225, 226.
ferveō, 206.3.
fidēs, 97.
fīdissimus, 127.
fīdō, 187.
fīdus, 127.
fierī nōn potest, 579.
fīgō, 208.2.
fīlī, 70.
fīlia, 62.
fluō, 211.1.
fīnēs, 104.
fingō, 208.1.
fīnis, 89.2.
fīō, 221, 228.
flt, 233.3.
flectō, 208.2.
fleō, 203.
flōrēscō, 214.2.
fluō, 213.1.
fodiō, 182.1, 213.2.
fōns, 84.2, 89.5.
forīs, 325.2.
fore, 173, 619.1, 636.

forīs, 402.
fors, 103.2.
forte, 103.2, 237.1.
fortior, 115, 119.
fortis, 115.
fortiter, 235.2.
foveō, 206.2.
frangō, 211.2.
fremō, 210.
frētus, 389.
frīgeō, 204.1.
frūctus, 93.
frūgālior, 125.
frūgālissimus, 125.
frūgī, 118, 125.
frnor, 215, 387.
fugiō, 182.1, 213.2.
fulciō, 218.
fulgeō, 205.
fulget, 233.1.
fundō, 211.2.
fungor, 215, 387.
fūr, 84.4.

Gādes, 102.2.
Gādibus, 87.
gaudeō, 187, 207.
geminī, 102.1.
gemō, 210.
gener, 67.
gēns, 84.2.
gerō, 208.1.
gīgnō, 210.
gracilis, 123.
gradior, 182.3, 215.
grātiā, 349, 639.1.
grātiae, 104.
grex, 89.4.

habeō, 204.1.
hāc, 240.2.
haereō, 205.
haud, 240.6, 659.
haud sciō an, 595.
hauriō, 218.
herī, 270, 403.
hērōs, 91.
hesternus, 270.
heu, 262; heus, 262.
hīc (pron.), 141, 142, 153, 154, 426, 528.
hīc (adv.), 240.2.
hinc, 240.2.
hodiē, 98, 270.
hodiernus, 270.
honor, 81.
horreō, 204.1.
hortor, 186, 202.
hortus, 65.
hostis, 82.
huc, 240.2.
hūmānē, 236.1.
hūmāniter, 236.1.
hnmī, 403.
humilis, 123.
humus, 68.

-ia, 265.
-iānus, 267.5.
-ias, 264.4.
ibi, 240.2.
-icius, 267.2.
-icus, 267.2, 267.6.
id, 34, 304.2.
idcircō, 518.
ideō, 518.
id quod, 304.2.
īdem, 141, 145, 427, 528.
-idēs, 264.4.
-īdēs, 264.4.
idōneus, 129, 588.3.
-idus, 269.2.
īdūs, 94.
igitur, 251, 671.
īgnis, 82, 89.2.
īgnōscō, 214.1.
-īle, 264.2.
Īlion, 72.
-ilis, 269.3.
-īlis, 267.2.
illāc, 240.2.
ille, 141, 143, 153, 154, 426, 528, 610.
illīc, 240.2.
illinc, 240.2.
illūc, 240.2.
-illus (-a, -um), 264.1.
imber, 84.
imbuō, 213.1.
immineō, 204.1.
impedīmenta, 104.
impleō, 203.
īmus, 126.2, 416.
in, 34, 245, 311, 325.1, 332, 406, 639.3, 4.
in-, 246.
-īna, 264.3.
incipiō, 213.2, 626.
incolō, 210.
incumbō, 210.
indigeō, 370.
indīgnus, 396, 588.3.
indulgeō, 205.
induō, 213.1.
īnferī, 126.2.
īnferior, 126.2.
īnferō, 226.
īnfimus, 126.2, 416.
īnfrā, 242.
ingĕnī, 69.
ingēns, 128.
ingentior, 128.
inimīcus, 246.
inīquus, 33.1.
in mentem venit, 365.
inops, 117.
inquam, 231.
īnsidiae, 102.3.
īnstar, 100.
intellegō, 211.2.
inter, 242, 311, 332, 425.1, 639.3.
interest, 369, 590.
interficiō, 213.2.
interim, 237. 2.
interior, 126.1.
intimus, 126.1.
intrā, 242.
-imus, 267.1.
-īmus, 267.2, 5, 7.
inveniō, 219.2.
iō, 262.
ipse, 146, 424, 428.
īrāscor, 215.
is, 34, 141, 144, 154, 426, 528, 588.1, 610.
-is, 264.4.
iste, 141, 143, 153, 154, 426.
it, 34.
ita, 240.6, 282.1, 528, 568.
itaque, 251.
-(i)tās, 265.
item, 568.
iter, 86, 88.2.
-(i)tia, 265.

-itō, 273.2.
-(i)tūdō, 265.
-ium, 264.3.
-ius, 267.2, 6, 7.
-īvus, 267.2.

jaceō, 204.1.
jaciō, 182.1, 213.2.
jam, 240.3, 447.2, 449.4, 537.
jocus, -ī, -a, 105.2.
jubeō, 205, 604, 629.
jūgerum, -a, 106.2.
jungō, 208.1.
jūnior, 128.
Jūpiter, 85.
jūs, 89.3.
jussū, 103.1.
juvenis, 82, 128 (adj.).
juvō, 201.2, 330.
jūxtā, 242.

lābor, 215.
lac, 34.
lacus, 96.
laedō, 208.2.
lambō, 212.
lampas, 91.
lapis, 77, 89.2.
largē, 236.1.
largior, 186, 220.
largiter, 236.1.
latēō, 204.1.
lavō, 201.2.
legō, 211.2.
-lentus, 267.3.
leō, 80.
lepus, 90.2.
liber, 67.
līber, 109, 122.
līberē, 235.1, 238.2.
līberī, 67.
libet, 233.2.
liceor, 207.
licet, 233.2, 258, 504.3, 571.
-liciō, 182.2.
linter, 88.2.
līs, 84.4.
litterae, 104.
locus, 402.
locus, -ī, -a, 105.2.
longius, 382.
loquor, 215.
lūceō, 205.
lūdō, 208.2.
luō, 213.1.

maereō, 204.1.
magis, 129, 227, 239.
māgnī, 362.
māgnificus, 124.
māgnō, 395.
māgnopere, 237.1.
māgnus, 125, 414.
mājor, 125, 414.
mājōrēs, 102.1.
male, 239.
maledicus, 124.
mālim, 490, 504.1.
māllem, 504.1.
mālō, 227, 504.4, 626, 629.
malus, 125.
māne, 100.
maneō, 205.
mānēs, 102.3.
manus, 94.
margō, 89.6.
mās, 84.4.
māteria, -iēs, 106.1.
mātūrēscō, 214.2.
mātūrō, 626.
māximam partem, 316.
māximē, 129, 239.
māximus, 125, 414.
mēcum, 244.
medius, 416.
meī, 138, 153, 420, 642.
mel, 34.
melior, 125.
melius, 239.
meminī, 230, 364, 361 N. 2.
memor, 117.
-men, 266.4.
mēns, 84.2.
mēnsa, 59.
mēnsis, 82, 89.2.
-mentum, 266.4.
mereō, 204.1.
mergō, 208.2.
meridiēs, 98.
messis, 82.
mētior, 220.
metuō, 213.1.
meus, 139, 153, 610.
mī, 139.
micō, 200.
mīles, 77.
mīlia, 132, 133.
mīlitiae, 403.
mille, 132, 133.
minae, 102.3.
minimē, 239, 240.6, 282.2.
minimī, 362.
minimō, 395.
minimus, 125, 128.
minor, 125.
minōris, 362, 363.
minuō, 213.1.
minus, 239, 382.
misceō, 204.2.
miser, 111.
misereor, 207, 368.
miseret, 233.2, 368.
mīsī, 194.
missus, 196.
mittō, 194, 196, 208.2.
modo, 237.1, 259, 563.
momordī, 195.
moneō, 171, 176, 177, 193, 196, 204.1.
monitus, 196.
mōns, 84.2, 89.5.
mordeō, 195, 206.1.
mōrēs, 104.
morior, 182.3, 215.
mōs, 81.
moveō, 206.2.
multum, 237.1, 239, 316.
multus, 125.
mūs, 84.4, 89.3.

nam, 252.
namque, 252.
nancīscor, 215.
nāscor, 215.
nātū, 103.1, 128.
nātū māximus, 128.
nātū minimus, 128.
nāvis, 82.
nē, 254, 491, 496.2, 3,

506, 507, 508, 514, 516, 563, 571, 573, 604, 659.
nē . . . quidem, 659.N., 662.
-ne, 34, 240.5, 280.2, 592, 630.3.
-ne . . . an (annē), 281.
-ne . . . annōn, 281.
Neāpolis, 82.
nec, 34, 663.
nec . . . nec, 248, 662.
necesse est, 504.3.
necne, 240.5.
nēdum, 565.
nefās, 100, 655.
neglegō, 211.2, 626.
nēmō, 434, 435, 578, 661, 662.
nēquam, 118, 125.
neque, 663.
neque . . . neque, 248.
nequeō, 229.
nē quis, 149.
nēquissimē, 239.
nēquiter, 239.
nēquius, 239.
nesciō an, 595.
nesciō quis, 149.
neuter, 112, 151, 425.2, 436.
nēve (neu), 507.
nī, 259.
nihil, 100, 316, 578, 661.
ningit, 233.1.
nisi, 259, 550, 559.
niteō, 204.1.
nītor, 215.
nix, 84.4.
nōlī, 496.1.
nōlim, 490, 504.1.
nōlīte, 496.1.
nōllem, 504.1.
nōlō, 227, 504.4, 626, 629.
nōmen, 80.
nōn, 227, 240.6, 282.2, 491, 493, 508, 529, 541, 566, 569, 580, 659, 661.
nōndum, 35, 537.
nōn ita, 282.2.
nōn modo nōn, 662.
nōnne, 240.5, 280.2, 592.
nōn nihil, 316.
nōn . . . nōn, 662.
nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, 250.
nōscō, 214.1.
noster, 139, 153, 610.
nōstī, 189.
nostrī, 420, 642.
nostrum, 137, 420.
novissimus, 127.
novus, 127.
nūbēs, 84.
nūllīus, 435.
nūllō, 435.
nūllus, 112, 151, 434, 436, 578.
num, 240.5, 280.2, 592.
numquam, 240.3, 661, 662.
nunc, 240.3.
nūptiae, 102.3.
-nus, 267.2.

ō! 262.
ob, 34, 242, 311, 332, 639.3.
oblīvīscor, 215, 364.
obruō, 213.1.
obtineō, 204.2.
occidō, 211.1.
occīdō, 211.1.
ōcior, 126.1.
ōcissimus, 126.1.
ōdī, 230.
offerō, 226.
ohē, 262.
-olus (-a, -um), 264.1.
omnis, 424.
operiō, 217.
opēs, 104.
oportet, 233.2, 504.3.
opperior, 220.
(ops), opis, 103.4, 104.
optimē, 239.
optimus, 125.
opus, 655.
-or, 266.1.
ōrātiō oblīqua, 598.
ōrātiō rēcta, 597.
orbis, 89.2.
ōrdior, 220.
ōrdō, 89.6.
orior, 220.
os (ossis), 34, 86, 88.1.
ōs (ōris), 34, 88.1.
-ōsus, 267.3.

pacīscor, 215.
paenitet, 233.2, 368.
pandō, 211.3.
pānis, 82, 89.2.
parcō, 211.1.
pareō, 204.1.
pariēs, 89.1.
pariō, 182.1, 213.2.
Paris, 92.
parō, 626.
pars, 84.2.
partēs, 104.
particeps, 117.
partus, 96.
parum, 239, 357.
parvī, 362.
parvō, 395.
parvus, 125.
pāscō, 214.1.
passim, 237.2.
patefaciō, 213.2.
pateō, 204.1.
patior, 182.3, 215, 629.
paulātim, 237.2.
pauper, 117.
pējor, 125.
pējus, 239.
pelagus, 68.
pellō, 211.1.
pendeō, 206.1.
penes, 242.
per, 34, 242, 311, 324.
peragō, 211.2.
percellō, 211.1.
pergō, 626.
perpetior, 215.
pēs, 34, 89.1.
pessimē, 239.
pessimus, 125.
petō, 209.
piget, 233.2, 368.
piissimus, 127.
pirus, 68.
piscis, 89.2.
pius, 127.
placeō, 204.1.
placet, 233.3.

plēbs, plēbēs, 106.4.
plērumque, 316.
pluit, 233.1.
plūrimī, 362.
plūrimō, 395.
plūrimum, 239, 316.
plūrimus, 125.
plūris, 362, 363.
plūs, 117, 125, 239, 382.
poēma, 91.
polliceor, 207.
polluō, 213.1.
pōne, 242.
pōnō, 209.
pōns, 84.2, 89.5.
poposcī, 195.
porrigere, 246.
porticus, 94.
portus, 96.
poscō, 195, 214.1.
possum, 221, 222, 626.
post, 242, 332.
posteāquam, 530.
posterī, 126.2.
posterior, 126.2.
postquam, 256, 530.
postrēmus, 126.2, 417.
postumus, 126.2.
potior, 126.1, 387.
potis, 221.
potissimum, 239.
potissimus, 126.1.
potius, 239.
prae, 243, 332.
praebeō, 204.1.
praestat, 233.3.
praeter, 242, 311.
precī, -em, -e, 103.3.
prehendō, 211.3.
premō, 208.2.
prīdiē, 98.
prīmō, 237.1, 418.
prīmum, 239, 418.
prīmus, 126.1, 130, 132, 416, 417, 418.
prīnceps, 76, 117 (adj.).
prior, 126.1, 417.
prius, 239.
prīusquam, 256, 534.
prō, 243, 332.
prō! 262.
proficīscor, 215.
prohibeō, 629.
prōnior, 128.
prōnus, 128.
prope, 239, 242.
propior, 126.1.
propius, 239.
propter, 242.
propterea, 518.
prōsternō, 209.
prōsum, 221.
prout, 260.
prōvidus, 124.
proximē, 239.
proximus, 126.1.
-pte, 34.
pudet, 233.2, 368.
puer, 66.
pūgnātur, 233.3.
pulvis, 89.2.

qua, 150.
quā, 237.1.
quae rēs, 304.2.
quaerō, 209, 592.
quālis, 152, 154, 581.1.
quam, 237.1, 240.4, 260, 380, 381, 414, 415, 525, 581.2.
quam sī, 567.
quamdiū, 256, 533.
quamquam, 258, 570, 570 N.
quamvīs, 240.4, 258, 572.
quandam, 150.
quandō, 240.3, 256, 257, 543, 581.2.
quantī, 362, 363.
quantus, 152, 154, 581.1.
quantuscumque, 582.
quārundam, 150.
quasi, 260, 567.
quater, 132.
quatiō, 182.1, 213.2.
-que, 34, 248.
quemadmodum, 568.
quendam, 150.
queō, 221, 229.
queror, 215.
quī, 34, 147, 148, 149, 154, 299-304, 429, 580-589; = et is, 606.
quī (abl.), 147.
quī (adv.), 573.
quia, 257, 544, 545, 546.
nōn quia, 547.
quibuscum, 244.
quīcumque, 149, 582.
quid, 34, 237.1, 316.
quīdam, 149, 150, 431.
quidem, 240.6.
quiēscō, 214.1.
quīlibet, 149.
quīn, 254, 573-579.
nōn quīn, 547.
quis, 34, 148, 149, 150, 154, 431, 578.
quīs, 147.
quispiam, 149, 431.
quisquam, 149, 432, 434.
quisque, 149, 423, 433.
quisquis, 149, 150, 582.
quīvīs, 149.
quō, 254, 506, 507, 539, 581.2.
nōn quō, 547.
nōn quō nōn, 547.
quoad, 256, 533.
quod (rel.), 34, 304.2.
quod (conj.), 257, 544, 545, 546, 549.
nōn quod, 547.
nōn quod nōn, 547.
quom, 256, 257.
quōminus, 254, 506, 507, 514.
quoniam, 257, 544, 545, 546.
quoque, 248.
quōrundam, 150.
quot, 34, 152, 154, 581.1.
quotiēns, 240.4, 581.2.

rādīcitus, 237.3.
rādīx, 78.
rādō, 208.2.
rapiō, 182.1, 197.4, 213.2.
rārē, 236.2.
rārō, 236.2.
re-, red-, 246.
recordor, 365.

rēctus, 196.
reddō, 211.1.
redimō, 197.1, 211.2.
redīre, 246.
referō, 226.
rēfert, 233.2, 369, 590.
regō, 171, 178, 179, 193, 194, 196, 208.1.
relinquō, 211.2.
reliquī, 436, 438.
reliquiae, 102.3.
reminīscor, 215, 364.
reor, 207.
repente, 537.
reperiō, 219.1.
requiēs, 106.4.
rēs, 97.
resistō, 211.1.
restis, 82.
retineō, 197.2, 204.2.
rēx, 78.
rēxī, 194.
rīdeō, 194, 205.
rīsī, 194.
Rōmae, 55, 61.
rumpō, 211.2.
ruō, 213.1.
rūpēs, 84.1.
rūrī, 87, 402.
rūs, 89.3, 325.2.

sacer, 110, 127.
sacerrimus, 127.
sāl, 90.1.
saliō, 217.
sanciō, 218.
sānē, 282.1, 569.
sanguis, 89.2.
sapiō, 182.1.
sat, 34.
satis, 357.
satis habeō, 626.
scandō, 211.3.
scīlicet, 282.1.
scindō, 211.1.
sciō, 626.
scit, 34.
-scō, 273.1.
scrībō, 194, 196, 208.1.
scrīpsī, 194.
scrīptus, 196.
sē, 138, 421, 433.2, 610.
sē-, sēd-, 246, 377.
sēcēdere, 246.
secō, 200.
sēcum, 244.
secundum, 242.
secundus, 130, 132.
secūris, 82.
sēcūrus, 275.3.
sed, 34, 250.
sedeō, 206.2.
sēdēs, 82.
seges, 88.2.
semel, 132.
senex, 82, 86, 128 (adj.).
senior, 128.
sentiō, 218.
sequor, 186, 215.
serō, 209.
sī, 34, 259, 550, 567, 572, 593.
sī minus, 550, 561 N.
sī nōn, 550, 560, 561.
sīc, 528, 568.
sīcut, 260, 568.
sileō, 204.1.
similis, 123.
similiter, 238.3.
simul (ac), 256, 530.
simul atque, 256, 530, 532.2.
sīn, 259, 550, 562.
sine, 243.
singulī, 130, 132.
sinō, 209, 629.
sī quis, 149.
sitis, 82.
sīve, 249.
sīve . . . sīve, 249.
-sō, 273.2.
socer, 67.
sōl, 34, 90.1.
soleō, 187, 207, 626.
sōlus, 112, 424.
solvī, 195.
solvō, 195, 211.3.
sonō, 200.
sors, 84.2.
spargō, 208.2.
spernō, 209.
spēs, 97.
-spiciō, 182.2.
splendeō, 204.1.
spondeō, 206.1.
sponte, -tis, 103.2.
stat, 34.
statim, 237.2.
statuō, 213.1.
sternō, 209.
stirps, 84.2.
-stitī, 201.1.
stō, 201.1.
strideō, 206.3.
stringō, 208.1.
struō, 213.1.
studeō, 204.1, 626.
stupeō, 204.1.
suādeō, 205.
sub, 34, 245, 311, 332.
subigō, 211.2.
subitō, 537.
subter, 245, 311.
suī, 138, 153, 642.
sum, 173, 221.
summus, 126.2, 416.
sūmō, 211.2.
super, 245, 311, 332.
superī, 126.2.
superior, 126.2.
suprā, 242.
suprēmus, 126.2.
sūs, 85.
suspiciō, 182.2.
suus, 139, 140, 153, 421, 423, 433.2, 610.

taceō, 204.1.
taedet, 233.2, 368.
tālis, 152, 154, 528, 588.1.
tam, 240.4, 588.1.
tamen, 250, 561.2, 569.
tametsī, 572.
tamquam (sī), 260, 567.
tangō, 211.1.
tantī, 362, 363.
tantopere, 528.
tantus, 152, 154, 528, 588.1.
-te, 34.
tegō, 208.1.
tendō, 211.1.
tenĕbrae, 37, 102.3.

teneō, 197.2, 204.2.
tener, 111.
tenus, 241, 243.
ter, 34, 132.
-ternus, 270.
terō, 209.
terrā marīque, 402.
terreō, 204.1.
texō, 210.
Tiberis, 82.
Tībure, -ī, 87.
timeō, 204.1.
-tinus, 270.
-tīnus, 270.
-tiō (-siō), 266.3.
-tō, 273.2.
tollō, 211.1, 226.
tonat, 233.1.
-tor (-sor), 266.2.
torpeō, 204.1.
torqueō, 205.
tot, 34, 152, 154.
totiēns, 240.4.
tōtus, 112, 402.
trabs, 76.
trahō, 208.1.
trāns, 242, 311, 320.
tremō, 210.
trēs, 130, 131.
tribuō, 213.1.
tribus, 96.
tridēns, 84.3.
trīste, 237.1.
-trīx, 266.2.
-trum, 266.4.
tū, 34, 137, 153, 610.
tueor, 207.
tuī, 138, 153, 420, 642.
tum, 240.3.
tunc, 240.3.
turris, 82.
-tus, 267.4.
-tus (-sus), 266.3.
tussis, 82.
tuus, 139, 153.

ubi, 240.2, 256, 530, 532.2, 584.2.
ubi prīmum, 530.
ubicumque, 582.
-ubus, 96.
ulcīscor, 215.
ūllus, 112, 151, 432, 434, 436.
ulterior, 126.1.
ultimus, 126.1, 417.
ultrā, 242.
-ulus (-a, -um), 264.1, 269.4.
umquam, 240.3.
unde, 581.2.
-undus, 192.
ūnīus, 36.2, 131.
ūnus, 112, 130, 131, 424, 433.3.
urbs, 84.
-uriō, 273.3.
ūrō, 208.1.
ūsquam, 240.2.
ut (utī), 34, 254, 255, 260, 493, 506, 507, 516, 519, 528, 530, 532.2, 568, 571, 581.2, 604.
ut eō, 507.
ut nē, 508.
ut nōn, 255, 508, 519.
ut sī, 567.
uter, 112, 151, 436.
uterque, 436, 439.
utinam, 484 N.
ūtor, 215, 387.
utrīque, 439.
utrīusque, 36.2.
utrum, 240.5.
utrum . . . an (anne), 281.
—— . . . an (anne), 281.
utrumne, 240.5.

vae, 262.
vannus, 68.
vās, vāsa, 106.2.
vātēs, 82.
-ve, 34, 249.
vē-, 246.
vēcors, 246.
vehō, 208.1.
vel, 34, 249, 414.
vel . . . vel, 249.
velim, 490, 504.1.
vellem, 504.1.
vellō, 211.3.
velut(sī), 260, 567.
vēnī, 195.
veniō, 195, 219.2.
ventum est, 233.3.
vēr, 88.2.
vērē, 235.1, 236.2.
vereor, 186, 207, 626.
Vergĭlī, 70.
vergō, 212.
vērō, 236.2, 250, 282.1.
verrō, 211.3.
versus, 241, 242.
vertex, 89.4.
vertī, 195.
vertō, 195, 211.3.
vērum, 250.
vescor, 215, 387.
vesper, 67.
vespere, -ī, 87, 403.
vester, 139, 153.
vestrī, 420, 642.
vestrum, 137, 420.
veterrimus, 127.
vetō, 200, 604, 629.
vetus, 117, 127.
vicis, -em, -e, 103.3.
victor, 79.
vidē, 496.3.
videō, 195, 196, 206.2.
vīdī, 195.
vincīō, 218.
vincō, 211.2.
vir, 34, 66.
virgō, 80.
vīrus, 68.
vīs, 85.
vīsus, 196.
vīvō, 208.1.
vix, 537.
vōbīscum, 244.
volō, 221, 227, 504.4, 626, 629.
volvō, 211.3.
vulgus, 68.
vultur, 90.2.

The numbers refer to sections

Abbreviations, 728.
Ablative, 55, 243, 245 ; in **-ābus**, 62 ; forms as adverbs, 237 ; uses of, 305, 372–407: originally three cases, 372 ; Abl. Proper, of separation, 374–377 ; of source (material), 378 ; of personal agent, 379 ; of comparison, 380–382, 415 ; Instrumental, of cause, 384, 385 ; of means, 386–389 ; of manner, 390, 391 ; of accordance, 391; of attendant circumstance, 391; of accompaniment, 392 ; of degree of difference, 393 ; of quality, 394 ; of price, 395 ; of specification, 396 ; supine in **-ū** as, 655 ; Abl. Absolute, 397–399 ; Locative, of place where, 401–403 ; of place from which, 404, 405 ; of time at which, 406 ; of time within which, 407.
Acatalectic, 702.
Accent, 38–40; of genitives in **-ī** for **-iī**, 69, 70.
Accompaniment, ablative of, 392.
Accordance, ablative of, 391.
Accusative, 55, 242, 245, 305 ; as object, 308 ; with intransitive verbs, 309–313 ; with impersonal verbs, 314 ; with passive voice, 315, 317, 318 ; as adverb, 237, 316 ; cognate, 313 ; two accusatives with verb, 317, 318 ; Greek, 321; subject of infinitive, 322 ; in exclamations, 323 ; time and space, 324 ; limit of motion, 325 ; with verbs of memory, 364 ; infinitive without subject, 626 ; with, 628, 629.
Active Voice, 158, 442.
Adjectives, defined, 7, 41; declension of, 107–118 ; gender, 107 ; of 1st and 2d decl., 108–112 ; of 3d decl., 113–117; of three endings, 114 ; of two endings, 115 ; of one ending, 116, 117; indeclinable, 118 ; with **-ius** in gen. and **-ī** in dat., 112 ; with **-e** in abl., 116 ; comparison of, regular, 119–124 ; irregular, 125 ; defective, 126–128 ; with **magis** and **māximē**, 129 ; numeral, 130 : table of, 132 ; declension of, 131, 133, 134 ; symbols of, 135 ; pronominal, 151 ; correlative, 152, 154 ; verbal, 157 ; participial, 116, 121, 167.3; derivative, 267–270 ; compounds, 275, 276.2 ; agreement of, 293–295, 300, 408 ; uses of, with dative, 344 ; as nouns, 409–411 ; as adverbs, 412 ; of ordinal numerals, 413 ; of comparatives and superlatives, 414–418 ; of pronominal, 436–439 ; subordinate clause as (attributive), 500 ; relative clause as, 585 ; infinitive with, 630.2 ; attributive, gerundive as, 643.1; participle as, 649–651; order of, 667.
Adverbial Clause, 501; of purpose, 517, 518 ; of result, 527, 528 ; of time, 529 ; of cause, 541; of condition, 550 ; of comparison, 566 ; of concession, 569 ; relative, 586 ; order of, 672.
Adverbs, defined, 7, 41; numeral, 130, 132 ; formation of, 235–237 : in **-ē**, 235.1, 236 ; in **-(i)ter**, 235.2, 236.1 ; in **-ō**, 236.2; in **-tim** (**-sim**), **-im**, 237.2 ; in **-tus**, 237.3 ; accus. and abl. forms, 237, 316 ; comparison of, regular, 238 ; irregular, 239; classes of, manner, 240.1; place, 240.2 ; time, 240.3 ; degree, 240.4 ; question, 240.5 ; assent and denial, 240.6 ; number, 240.7; adjectives used as, 412; compounds, 275.3, 276.4; subordinate clause as, 501; uses of, 656–663 ; position of, 657, 658 ; negative, 659–663 ; order of, 669.
Affirmative, expressed by two negatives, 660, 661.
Agent, dative of, 339 ; ablative of, 379.
Agreement, of words, 288.1; predicate noun, 290, 297.2 ; appositive, 291, 292, 297.3 ; adjective, 293–295, 300 ; parti-

ciple, 293, 295.2, 297.4, 298.3; pronoun in general, 293; relative pronoun, 299–304; antecedent, 302–304; verb, 296–298; agreement, in gender, 290, 295, 297.4; in number, 297, 298.1; in case, 290, 291, 292.3, 299; in person, 298.2; gender and number, 292.1, 299; number and person, 289, 296; gender, number and case, 293; partitively, 292.2; collectively, 294.1 and 2; with one of several, 295; with nearer word, 294.1, 297.2 and 3; with the sense, 294.2 and 3; of relative with antecedent, 299–301; by attraction, 302; by repetition, 303.2; by transfer, 303.3.

Alphabet, 13.

Anaphora, 675.

Answers, 282.

Antecedent, 299–304: agreement of relative with, 299–301; attraction of, 302.2; omission of, 303.1; repetition of, 303.2; transfer of, 303.3.

Apodosis, 551.

Appositive, 291, 292, 297.3; partitive, 292.2; with locative, 292.3; of relative with whole sentence, 304.2; of genitive with a possessive pronoun, 424; clauses, 499; of result, 521, 526; infinitive as, 624.

Arsis, 700.

Aspirate, 19.

Asyndeton, 253.

Attendant Circumstance, abl. of, 391.

Attraction, of relative, 302.1; of antecedent, 302.2; subjunctive by, 620.

Attributive, adjective, 295; genitive, 347–358; clauses, 500, 585, 587, 672; gerundive, 613.1; participle, 650.

Breathings, 19, 23.

Bucolic Caesura, 715.

Caesura, 703, 704, 713, 714, 715.

Calendar, the Roman, 718–726.

Cardinals, 130–133.

Case Endings, defined, 54; table of, 99.

Cases, table of, 55; principal uses of, 55; locative, 55, 61, 69, 87, 95, 98; having same ending, 58; uses of, 305: nom., 306; voc., 307; acc., 308–325; dat., 326–345; gen., 346–371; abl., 372–407. See Agreement.

Catalectic, 702.

Cause, conjunctions of, 252, 257; ablative of, 384, 385; clauses of, 541–549: introduced by **cum**, 542; **quandō**, 543; **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, 544–549: with indicative, 545, 548; with subjunctive, 546, 547; relative clause of, 586.4; participle denoting, 651.

Characteristic, clause of, 586.2, 587–589.

Chiasmus, 675.

Clauses, defined, 285: coördinate, 286; principal (leading), 287, 461, 477–496; subordinate (dependent), 287, 462, 497–620; substantive, 498, 499; appositive, 499; attributive, 500; adverbial, 501; purpose, 506–518; result, 519–528; time, 529–540; cause, 541–549; condition, 550–565; comparison, 566–568; concession, 569–572; negative with **quīn**, 573–579; relative, 580–589; interrogative, 590–595.

Cognate Accusative, 313.

Collective Nouns, 294.2.

Comparison, defined, 44; degrees of, 119; of adjectives, 119–129; of adverbs, 238, 239; conjunctions of, 260; ablative of, 380–382, 415; clauses of, 566–568: conditional, 567; correlative, 568; relative, 586.6.

Compounds, 263.2; nouns: with verb, 274.1; with preposition, 274.2; adjectives: with noun, 275.1, of noun and verb, 275.2; with preposition (adverb), 275.3; verbs: with noun, 276.1; with adjective, 276.2; with verb, 276.3; with adverb, 276.4; with preposition, 276.5; stem-vowel changes in, 197; of **dō** and **stō**, 201, 211; of **faciō**, 213.2; of **sum**, 221; of **ferō**, 226; of **volō**, 227; of **queō**, 229; dative with, 332.

Compound Sentence, 284–287.

Concession, clauses of, 569–572: with **quamquam**, 570; with **cum**, **licet**, **ut**, **nē**, 571; with **etsī**, etc., 572; relative, 586.7.

Concessive, conjunctions, 258; subjunctive, 483, 491; participle, 651.

Conclusion, of conditional sentence, defined, 489, 551; imperative or jussive subjunctive in, 554.

Conditional Sentence, 550–565, 489: particles introducing, 259, 550; parts of,

551; moods of, 552, 554; kinds, condition as fact, 553, 554; as possible, 555, 556; as contrary to fact, 557, 558; opposing and negative, 559–562; wish and proviso, 563–565; comparison, 567; relative, 586.5; participle denoting condition in, 651; sequence of tenses violated in, 471; imperative in conclusion of, 554; in indirect discourse, 613–619: condition as fact, 615; as possible, 616; as contrary to fact, 617–619.

Conditional Subjunctive, in principal clauses, 480, 485–490, 491; in subordinate clauses, 555–565.

Conjugation, defined, 45, 155, 164; the four regular, 170: first, 174–175; second, 176, 177; third, 178, 179; fourth, 180, 181; in **-iō**, 182–184; of deponents, 185, 186; of semi-deponents, 187; periphrastic, 188; peculiar forms in, 189–192; changes in stem, 193–197; of irregular verbs, 221–229; defective, 230–232.

Conjunctional Clauses, 503–579; transition to, 504, 505; of purpose, 506–518: substantive, 510–516: adverbial, 517, 518; of result, 519–528: substantive, 521–526; adverbial, 527, 528; of time, 529–540: introduced by **postquam, ubi,** etc., 530–532; **dum, dōnec, quoad,** 533; **antequam, priusquam,** 534; **cum** temporal, 535; **cum** historical, 536; **cum** inverse, 537; **cum** coincident, 538; **cum** relative, 539; **cum** concessive, 571; of cause, introduced by **cum,** 542; **quandō,** 543; **quod, quia, quoniam,** with indicative, 545, 548; with subjunctive, 546, 547; of condition, 550–565: particles introducing, 550; parts of, 551; moods of, 552, 554; kinds: as fact, 553, 554; as possible, 555, 556; as contrary to fact, 557, 558; opposing and negative, 559–562; of wish and proviso, 563–565; of comparison, 566–568; negative with **quīn,** 573–579.

Conjunctions, defined, 8, 41, 247; coördinate: copulative, 248; disjunctive, 249; adversative, 250; inferential, 251; causal, 252; omission of, 253; pairs of, 248–250; subordinate: final, 254; consecutive, 255; temporal, 256; causal, 257; concessive, 258; conditional, 259; comparative, 260; interrogative, 261; order of, 671.

Consonants, classes, 17–25; sounds of, 29; stems of 3d declension, 75–81; of verbs, 208–212.

Coördinate, conjunctions, 248–252; clauses, 286.

Correlative, adjectives, 151; pairs, 152, 154; clauses of comparison, 568.

Dactyl, 698, 700.

Dative, 55; in **-ābus,** 62; uses of, 305, 326–345: as indirect object, 326; with transitive verbs, 327, 328; of direction of motion, 329; with intransitive verbs, 330; with impersonal verbs, 233.2, 331; with compound verbs, 332; with adjectives, nouns, and adverbs, 333; of person or thing concerned, 334–340; of reference, 335–338, 345; ethical, 336; with verbs of separation, 337; of supposed standpoint, 338; of agent, 339; of possessor, 340; predicate, of tendency, 342; of purpose, 343–345.

Declarative Sentence, 279.1; in indirect discourse, 600, 603.

Declension, defined, 43.

Declensions, of nouns, number of, 56; how distinguished, 56; table of, 57; first, 59–63; second, 64–72; third, 73–92; fourth, 93–96; fifth, 97, 98; nouns variable in (heteroclites), 106: of adjectives, 107–118; of numerals, 131, 133, 134: of pronouns, 137–148; of participles, 116, 167.3.

Defective, adjectives, 126–128; nouns, 101–103; verbs, 230–232.

Definition, genitive of exact, 348.

Degree, adverbs of, 240.4; ablative of, 393.

Degrees in comparison, 119; of adjectives, 119–129; of adverbs, 238, 239.

Demonstrative Pronouns, 141–145, 153, 154; 304.2; uses of, 426, 427; order of, 668.

Denial, adverbs of, 240.6.

Dentals, 18, 21: stems ending in, 77.

Dependent: see Subordinate.

Deponent Verb, 185, 186, 202, 207, 215, 220, 647.

Derivatives, 263.1: nouns: from nouns, 264; from adjectives, 265; from verbs,

266; adjectives: from nouns, 267; from adjectives, 268; from verbs, 269; from adverbs, 270; verbs: from nouns, 271; from adjectives, 214.2, 272; from verbs, 214.2, 273; adverbs: from adjectives, 235, 240.1.
Desideratives, 273.3.
Diaeresis, 704; also called Bucolic Caesura, 715.
Diastole, 709.
Diminutives, 264.1, 268.
Diphthongs, 16; sounds of, 28; quantity of, 33.1.
Direct Discourse, 597.
Direct Object, 158, 308, 665.
Direct Questions: word-questions, 280.1; sentence-questions, 280.2; direct double questions, 281; answers to questions, 282; rhetorical questions, 283, 493, 603; in indirect discourse, 599, 601.
Direct Quotations, **inquam** in, 231.
Distributives, 130, 132, 134.
Double Accusative, 317, 318.
Double Questions, direct, 281; indirect, 594.

Elegiac Distich, 717.
Elision, 705.
Ellipsis, 740.
Enclitics, 40.
Endings, of nouns: defined, 54; blended with stem, 54; table of, 99; of comparison: in adjectives, 120–128; in adverbs, 238, 239; of verbs: tables, 168, 169; subject implied in, 289.
Epicenes, 52.
Epistolary, imperfect, 449.3; perfect, 456; pluperfect, 458.
Ethical Dative, 336.
Etymology: see Words.
Exact Definition, genitive of, 348.
Exclamations, 262, 279.4; nominative in, 307; accusative in, 323; infinitive in, 630.3.

Feet, 697, 698.
Figures, of prosody, 705–711; of speech, 675, 740.
Finite Verb, 157, 278, 289; uses of, 440–620. See Verbs.
Frequentatives, 273.2.
Future Perfect Tense, 156, 160, 161, 167, 472.
Future Tense, 156, 160, 161, 167, 472; of infinitive, time expressed by, 635; verbs lacking, 636.

Gender, kinds of, 49; rules, for natural, 50; grammatical, 51; common (epicenes), 52; of indeclinable nouns, 51.3, 100; nouns variable in (heterogeneous), 105; of adjectives, 107. See Agreement.
Genitive, 55; stem of noun seen in endings of, 57; in **-āī**, **-ās**, 62; in **-ūm** for **-ārum**, 62; in **-ī** for **-iī**, 69, 70; uses of, 305, 346–371: attributive, 347–358: of exact definition (origin and material), 348; with **causā** and **grātiā**, 349; subjective, 350; objective, 351, 352, 420: with verbs of memory, 364–366; of judicial action, 367; impersonal, 368, 369; of plenty or want, 370; of partaking and acquiring, 371; of possession, 353, 360; of quality (number, measure, time, space), 354, 360; of the whole (partitive), 355–358, 360, 420; predicate, of possession, 360; of quality, 360; of the whole, 360; of indefinite price or value, 361–363; in apposition with a possessive pronoun, 424.
Gerund, 157, 185, 192, 637; uses of, 639–641.
Gerundive, 157, 185, 188, 192, 339, 638; uses of, 640, 642–644: as attributive adjective, 643.1; as predicate adjective, 643.2; in periphrastic conjugation, 644.1; to express purpose, 644.2.
Grammatical Order, of words, 664–672; of subordinate clauses, 672.
Greek Accusative, 321.
Greek Nouns, of 1st decl., 63; of 2d decl., 72; of 3d decl., 91, 92; quantity of, 695.
Gutturals, 18, 21, 22; stems ending in, 78.

Hendiadys, 740.
Heteroclites, 106.
Heterogeneous Nouns, 105.
Hexameter, 680, 712–715.
Hiatus, 706.
Historical, perfect, 160; tenses, 161; present, 447.1, 470; infinitive, 631.1.
Hortatory: see Jussive Subjunctive.
Hypallage, 740.
Hyperbaton, 740.
Hyperbole, 740.
Hysteron Proteron, 740.

Iambus, 698.
Ictus, 700.
Imperative Mood, 159; tenses of, 160, 473–475; in commands, 495; in prohibitions, 496; in conclusion of conditional sentence, 554.
Imperative Sentence, 279.3; in indirect discourse, 599, 602, 604.
Imperfect Tense, 156, 160, 161, 167; epistolary, 449.3.
Impersonal Verbs, 233, 442.4; accusative with, 314; dative with, 233.2, 331; genitive with, 368, 369.
Inceptives (inchoatives), 214, 273.1.
Indeclinable, nouns, 51.3, 100; adjectives, 118.
Indefinite, pronouns, 149, 150; uses of, 430–435; second person with subjunctive, 494.
Indicative Mood, 159; tenses of, 160, 445–460; in principal clauses, 477–479; in subordinate clauses, 497, 529, 535, 541, 552, 568, 570, 572, 585, 607.
Indirect Discourse, defined, 598; moods of, in principal clauses, 599–604; declarative, 600, 603; interrogative, 599, 601; imperative, 599, 602, 604; in subordinate clauses, 605–607, 613; tenses in, of infinitive, 608, 632–636; of subjunctive, 608; persons in, 609–612; conditional sentences in, 613–619.
Indirect Double Questions, 594.
Indirect Object, 326, 665.
Indirect Questions, 590–595; unlike relative clauses, 591; particles introducing, 590, 592–595.
Infinitive, 157, 185, 191; uses of, 622–636: as neuter noun, 622; as subject, 623; as predicate noun or appositive, 624; as object, 625; without subject accusative, 626; with, 628, 629; purpose expressed by, 630.1; with adjectives, 630.2; in exclamations, 630.3; nominative with: as subject (historical), 631.1; as predicate noun or adjective, 631.2; in passive sentences, 631.3; in relative clauses, 606; tenses of, 608: time depending on leading verb, 632; time expressed, by present, 633; by perfect, 634; by future, 635, 636.
Inflection, defined, 42; table of, 46. See Declension, Conjugation, Comparison.
Inseparable Prepositions (or Adverbs), 246.
Intensive Pronouns, 146; uses of, 428.
Interjections, 8, 41, 262.
Interrogative, particles, 240.5, 261, 590, 592–595; pronouns, 148, 154; order of, 668.
Interrogative Clauses (Indirect Questions), 590–595; unlike relative, 591; particles introducing, 590, 592–595; indirect double questions, 594.
Interrogative Sentence, 279.2, 280–283; in indirect discourse, 599, 601.
Intransitive Verbs, 158; accusative with, 309–313; dative with, 330.
Inverse Attraction, 302.2.
Irregular, nouns, 85, 86, 95; comparison, of adjectives, 125; of adverbs, 239; verbs, 221–229.

Jussive Subjunctive, 482, 492.

Labials, 18, 21; stems ending in, 76.
Leading: see Principal.
Limit of Motion, accusative of, 325.
Liquids, 22; liquid stems, 79.
Lists of Verbs, 198–220.
Literary Present, 446.3.
Litotes, 740.
Locative, case, 55; in -ae, -īs, 61, 69; in -ī, 69, 87, 95; in -e, -ibus, 87; in -ē, 98; ablative, 400–407.

Manner, adverbs of, 240.1; ablative of, 390, 391.
Material, genitive of, 348; ablative of, 378.
Means, ablative of, 386–389.
Measure, genitive of, 354.
Metaphor, 740.
Metonomy, 740.
Metre, defined, 701; dactylic hexameter, 712–715; dactylic pentameter, 716, 717.
Mixed Stems, nouns of, 84.
Monosyllables, quantity of, 34.
Months, names of, 718.
Moods, 156; defined, 159, 476; signs of, 167; in principal clauses, indicative, 477–479; subjunctive, 480–494; volitive, 481–483, 491; jussive, 482, 492; concessive, 483; optative, 480, 484, 491; conditional (potential), 480, 485–490, 491; with negatives, 491, 492; in rhetorical questions, 493; imperative, 495, 496; in subordinate clauses, 497; of conditional

sentence, 552, 554 ; in principal clauses of indirect discourse, 599-604 ; in subordinate, 605-607.
Motion, accusative of limit of, 325 ; dative of direction of, 329.
Mutes, 18, 19 ; table of, 21; mute stems, 76-78.

Names, Roman, 727 ; abbreviations of, 728.
Nasals, 22 ; nasal stems, 80.
Negative, subjunctive sentences, 491, 492 ; and opposing conditions, 559-562 ; clauses with quīn, 573-579 : in principal clauses, stating commands and questions, 574.I ; after clause of negative meaning, 574.II-579 ; adverbs, 659-663.
No and Yes, in answers, 282.
Nominative, 55, 289, 305 ; in exclamations, 307; with infinitive, as subject (historical), 631.1; as predicate noun or adjective, 631.2 ; in passive sentences, 631.3.
Nouns, defined, 6, 41, 47-106 : kinds of, 47, 48 ; genders of, 49-52 ; numbers of, 53 ; cases of, 54, 55 ; declensions of, 56-106 : first, 59-63 ; second, 64-72 ; third, 73-92 ; fourth, 93-96 ; fifth, 97, 98 ; table of endings, 99 ; indeclinable, 51.3, 100 ; defective, 101-103 ; variable, 104-106 ; verbal, 157; derivative, 264-266 ; compound, 274 ; appositive, 291, 292, 297.3 ; predicate, 290, 297.2, 624, 631.2 ; collective, 294.2 ; adjectives as, 409-411; infinitive as neuter, 622 ; subordinate clauses as (substantive), 498, 499 ; order of, 666.
Number, 53, 156, 162, 168 ; adverbs of, 240.7; genitive of, 354. See Agreement.
Numeral Adjectives, 130 ; table of, 132 ; declension of, 131, 133, 134 ; symbols of, 135 ; ablative with, 356.
Numeral Adverbs, 130, 132.

Object, direct, 158, 308 ; affected, 308 ; effected, 308 ; indirect, 326 ; infinitive as, 625 ; order of, 665.
Objective Genitive, 351, 352, 364-371, 420.
Opposing and Negative Conditions, 559-562.
Optative Subjunctive, 480, 484, 491.
Ōrātiō oblīqua, 598.
Ōrātiō rēcta, 597.
Ordinals, 130, 132, 134, 413.
Origin, genitive of, 348.
Oxymoron, 740.

Participial Adjectives, 116, 121, 167.3.
Participial Stem (System), 166, 171, 172, 196, 197, 204.1, 636.
Participle, 121, 157, 185, 183 ; declension of, 116, 167.3 ; agreement of, 293, 295.2, 297.4, 298.3 ; uses of, 645-652 : time of tenses of, 646, 647 ; as verb, 648 ; as adjective, 649-651; with force of clause, 651.
Particles, 9, 234 ; interrogative, 240.5, 261, 590, 592-595. See Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions, Interjections.
Partitive, apposition, 292.2 ; genitive, 355-358, 360, 420.
Passive Sentence, nominative used with Infinitive in, 631.3.
Passive Voice, 158, 442 ; accusative with verbs in, 315, 317, 318 ; dative with, 331, 339 ; ablative of agent with, 379 ; with reflexive meaning, 442.3.
Patronymics, 264.4.
Pentameter, 716, 717.
Perfect Stem (System), 166, 171, 172, 187, 189, 194, 195, 197.
Perfect Tense, 156, 160, 161, 167, 169, 198 ; in -vī, 199, 203, 209, 213, 214, 216 ; in -uī, 200, 204, 210, 213, 217; in -ī, 201, 206, 211, 213, 214, 219 ; in -sī, 205, 208, 213, 218 ; historical, 160 ; epistolary, 456 ; of infinitive, time expressed by, 634.
Periphrastic Conjugation, 188 ; gerundive used in, 644.1 ; in subjunctive clause, 472.
Person, 137-139, 141, 156, 163, 168. See Agreement.
Person or Thing Concerned, dative of, 334-340.
Personal Pronouns, 137, 153 ; uses of, 419, 420.
Persons, 163 ; in indirect discourse, 609-612.
Place, ablative of, 401-405 ; accusative of, 325 ; adverbs of, 240.2.
Pleonasm, 740.

Pluperfect Tense, 156, 160, 161, 167; epistolary, 458.
Position, syllables long by, 35, 680.
Possession, genitive of, 353, 360.
Possessive Pronouns, 139, 153; genitive in apposition with, 424; order of, 668.
Possessor, dative of, 340.
Potential Subjunctive, 485.
Predicate, 277, 278, 284, 285; noun, 290, 297.2; infinitive, 624; adjective, 295; dative, 341–345; genitive, 359–363; nominative with infinitive as, 631.2; gerundive as, 643.2, 644; participle, 651; order of, 664.1.
Prepositions, defined, 8, 41, 241; with acc. only, 242; with abl. only, 243; with acc. or abl., 245; inseparable, 246; acc. with and without, 311, 320, 324, 325; abl. with and without, 319, 374–407; compounds with, 274.2, 275.3, 276.5; order of, 670.
Present Perfect Tense, 160, 161, 453, 460.
Present Stem (System), 166, 171, 172, 182, 187, 197, 204.1, 212.
Present Tense, 156, 160, 161, 167; historical, 447.1, 470; literary, 446.3; of infinitive, time expressed by, 633.
Price, genitive of indefinite, 361–363; ablative of, 395.
Principal, tenses, 161; parts of verbs, 171; clauses, 287; tenses of subjunctive in, 461; moods in, indicative, 477–479; subjunctive, 480–494; imperative, 495, 496; clauses with **quīn**, stating commands and questions, 574.I.
Prolepsis, 740.
Pronominal Adjectives, 151; uses of, 436–439.
Pronouns, defined, 7, 41; kinds, 136; declension of, 137–148; personal, 137; reflexive, 138; possessive, 139; demonstrative, 141–145; intensive, 146; relative, 147; interrogative, 148; indefinite, 149, 150; tables of, 153, 154; correlatives, 152, 154; agreement of, 293; uses of: personal, 419, 420; reflexive, 421–423; possessive, 424; reciprocal, substitutes for, 425; demonstrative, 426, 427; intensive, 428; relative, 299–304, 429; indefinite, 430–435; order of, 668.
Pronunciation of Latin, Roman, 26–29; English, 729–739.
Prosody, 678–717: rhythm, 678–680; quantity of syllables, 682–695; verse and metre, 696–717: foot, 697; thesis, arsis, ictus, 700; scanning, 703–711; dactylic hexameter, 712–715; dactylic pentameter, 716, 717.
Protasis, 551.
Proviso, conditional clauses of, 563, 565.
Purpose, dative of, 343, 344; clauses of, 506–518: substantive, 510–516; adverbial, 517, 518; relative clause of, 586.1; expressed, by infinitive, 630.1; by gerundive, 644.2; by participle, 651; by supine in **-um**, 654.

Quality, genitive of, 354, 360; ablative of, 394.
Quantity, of vowels, 33; of diphthongs, 33.1; of syllables, 32–37; of monosyllables, 34; of final syllables, 682–695.
Questions, direct, 280; direct double, 281, 594; indirect, 590–595; indirect double, 594; particles introducing, 240.5, 280, 281; rhetorical, 283, 493; in indirect discourse, 603.

Reciprocal Pronouns, substitutes for, 425.
Reference, dative of, 335–338, 345.
Reflexive Pronouns, 138, 153; **suus**, 140, 433.2; uses of, 421–423.
Regular Verbs, 170, 174–184.
Relative, pronouns, 147, 154; uses of, 299–304, 429; in apposition with whole sentence, 304.2; clauses, 580–589: words introducing, 580–584; as adjective, 585; conjunctional, 586: of purpose (result), time, cause, condition, comparison, concession, 586; of characteristic, 586.2, 587–589; order of, 668.
Result, clauses of, 519–528: substantive, 521–526; adverbial, 527, 528; relative, 586.2.N.
Rhetorical Order, 673–676.
Rhetorical Questions, 283, 493; in indirect discourse, 603.
Rhythm, 678–680.

Scanning, 703–711.
Semi-Deponent Verbs, 187, 207, 647.
Semivowels, 24.

Sentence-Questions, 280.2.
Sentences, 5, 277, 278; declarative, 279.1; in indirect discourse, 600, 603; interrogative, 279.2, 280–283; in indirect discourse, 599, 601; imperative, 279.3; in indirect discourse, 599, 602, 604; exclamatory, 279.4; simple, 284, 285; compound, 284–287: coördinate, 286; subordinate, 287; nominative used with infinitive in passive, 631.3.
Separation, dative with verbs of, 337; ablative of, 374–377.
Sequence of Tenses, 462–471: defined, 462; general rule for, 462; table showing, 463; apparent variations in, 466–471.
Simile, 740.
Simple Sentence, 284, 285.
Sounds, 5; of vowels, 26, 27; of diphthongs, 28; of consonants, 29.
Source, ablative of, 378.
Space, accusative of, 324; genitive of, 354.
Specification, accusative of, 321; ablative of, 396, 655.
Spirants, 23; spirant stems, 81.
Spondaic, 712.
Spondee, 698, 700.
Standpoint, dative of supposed, 338.
Stems, defined, 54; of nouns: classified, 57; in -a, 59; in -o, 64; in consonant, 75–81; in -i, 82; in -u, 93; in -ē, 97; mixed, 84; table of, 99; of adjectives, in comparison, 120, 123; of verbs, present, perfect, participial, 165, 166, 171; shown in synopsis, 172; changes, 193–197.
Subject, 277, 278, 284, 285; in nominative, 289; noun or substitute, 289; implied in verb-ending, 289; agreement of predicate noun with, 290; of appositive (apposition), 291, 292; accusative of infinitive, 322; infinitive as, 623; accusative, infinitive without, 623, 626; with, 623, 628, 629; nominative with infinitive as (historical), 631.1; order of, 664.
Subjective Genitive, 350.
Subjunctive Mood, 159; tenses of, 160, 461–472, 608; in principal clauses, 480–491: volitive, 481–483, 491: jussive, 482, 492; concessive, 483; optative, 484, 491; conditional, 485–490, 491; in subordinate clauses, 497–595; in indirect discourse, 605, 613–619; by attraction, 620.
Subordinate (dependent) Clauses, defined, 287, 497; tenses in, 462; moods in, 497; uses of: as nouns (substantive), 498, 499; as adjectives (attributive), 500; as adverbs (adverbial), 501; forms of, conjunctional, 503–579: transition to, 504, 505; purpose, 506–518; result, 519–528; time, 529–540; cause, 541–549; condition, 550–565; comparison, 566–568; concession, 569–572; negative with quīn, 573–579; relative, 580–589; interrogative (indirect questions), 590–595; in indirect discourse, 605–620.
Subordinate Conjunctions, 254–261.
Substantive Clause, 498, 499; of purpose, 510–516; of result, 521–526; relative quod-clause, 549; interrogative, 590–595.
Suffixes, 263.1.
Supine, 157, 185; uses of, in -um to express purpose, 654; in -ū, 655.
Syllables, defined, 30; division of, 31; quantity of, 32–37; 682–695: long by nature, 33, 34; long by position, 35; short, 36; common, 37; names of, 38; accent on, 39, 40; monosyllables, 34.
Synapheia, 705.
Syncope, 708.
Synecdoche, 740.
Synopsis, of regular verb, 172; of uses of moods, 596.
Syntax: see Sentences.
Systole, 709.

Tables: of mutes, 21; of inflection, 46; of cases, 55; of declensions, 57, 99; of pronouns, 153, 154; of tense and mood signs, 167; of personal endings, 168, 169; of regular verb, 172; of perfect forms, 198; of tenses of indicative, 460; showing sequence of tenses, 463; of uses of moods, 596.
Temporal: see Time.
Tendency, dative of, 342.
Tenses, 156, 160, 161, 443–475; for uncompleted and completed action, 160; for past, present, and future time, 161; principal, 161; historical, 161; signs of, 167; of indicative, 160, 445–460; table, 460; of subjunctive, 160, 461–472, 608; of imperative, 160, 473–475; of infinitive, 608, 632–636: time depending on

leading verb, 632; time expressed, by present, 633; by perfect, 634; by future, 635, 636; of participles, 645-647.
Thesis, 700.
Time, adverbs of, 240.3; accusative of, 324; genitive of, 354; ablative of, 406, 407; clauses of, introduced by **postquam, ubi**, etc., 530-532; **dum, dōnec, quoad**, 533; **antequam, postquam**, 534; **cum** temporal, 535; **cum** historical, 536; **cum** inverse, 537; **cum** coincident, 538; **cum** relative, 539; relative clause of, 586.3; of tenses, of infinitive, 632-636; of participle, 646, 647; participle denoting, 651.
Tmesis, 711.
Transition, to conjunctional clause, 504, 505.
Transitive Verbs, 158, 308; accusative with, 308; dative with, 327, 328.
Trochee, 698.

Value, genitive of, 361-363.
Variable Nouns, 104-106; in meaning, 104; in gender (heterogeneous), 105; in declension (heteroclites), 106.
Verbal Adjectives, 157: gerundive, 638, 640, 642-644; participle, 645-652.
Verbal Nouns, 157; infinitive, as neuter noun, 622; as subject, 623; as predicate noun or appositive, 624; as object, 625; without subject accusative, 626; with, 628, 629; purpose expressed by, 630.1; with adjectives, 630.2; in exclamations, 630.3; nominative with, as subject (historical), 631.1; as predicate, 631.2; in passive sentences, 631.2; tenses of, 632-636; gerund, 157, 185, 192, 637; uses of, 639-641; supine, 157, 185; uses of, 653-655; in **-um** to express purpose, 654; in **-ū**, 655.
Verbs, defined, 6, 41, 155; voices, 156, 158; moods, 156, 159; tenses, 156, 160, 161; numbers, 162; persons, 163; stems, 165, 166, 171; systems, 171, 172; changes in, 166, 171, 172, 193-197, see also list of verbs, 198-220; tense and mood signs, 167; personal endings, 168, 169; principal parts, 171; synopsis of, 172; verb lists, 198-220; conjugation of, 170-232: **sum**, 173; first, 174, 175; second, 176, 177; third, 178, 179; fourth, 180, 181; in **-iō**, 182-184; deponent, 185, 186, 202, 207, 215, 220, 647; semi-deponent, 187, 207, 647; periphrastic, 188, 644.1; peculiar forms, 189-192; irregular, 221-229; defective, 230-232; impersonal, 233, accusative with, 314; dative with, 233.2, 331; genitive with, 368, 369; inceptive (inchoative), 273.3; compound, 197, 201, 211, 213.2, 221, 226, 227, 229, 276; dative with, 332; derivative, 214.2, 271-273; necessary in sentence, 155, 278; omitted, 278, 191; agreement of, 296-298; with accusative, 308-320; with dative, 326-332, 339; with genitive, 359-371; with ablative, 375-377, 379, 385, 387; uses of, finite, 440-620; voices, 442; tenses, 443-475; of indicative, 445-460; of subjunctive, 461-472; of imperative, 473-475; moods, in principal clauses: indicative, 477-479; subjunctive, 480-494; volitive, 481-483, 491; optative, 484, 491; conditional (potential), 485-490, 491; in rhetorical questions, 493; with indefinite second person, 494; imperative, 495, 496; verbs in subordinate clauses, 497-620; verbal nouns and adjectives, 621-655; infinitive, 622-636; gerund, 637, 639-641; gerundive, 638, 640, 642-644; participle, 645-652; supine, 653-655.
Verse, 696, 703.
Vocative, 55; in **-ī**, 70; uses of, 305, 307.
Voices, 156, 158, 168, 442.
Volitive Subjunctive, 480-483, 491, 492.
Vowels, 16; sounds of, 26, 27; quantity of, 33.

Whole, genitive of (partitive), 355-358, 360, 420.
Wish, conditional clauses of, 563, 564.
Word-Questions, 280.1.
Words (Etymology), 41-276: formation of, 263-276; agreement of, 288.1; government of, 288.2; dependence of, 288.3; introduction of, 288.4; connection of, 288.5; order of, grammatical, 664-672; rhetorical, 673-676; fixed, 677.

Yes and No, in answers, 282.

Zeugma, 740.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

THE CLASSICAL SERIES

A New Series of Latin and Greek Texts for Secondary Schools, under the editorial charge of

John Henry Wright, A. M., LL. D., Harvard University
Bernadotte Perrin, Ph.D., LL.D., Yale University
Andrew Fleming West, Ph.D., LL.D., Princeton University

These names guarantee the highest standard of scholarship and pedagogic fitness.

The whole series throughout is based on the lines laid down in the Report of the Committee of Twelve of the American Philological Association to the National Educational Association.

These lines are now universally accepted as defining the ideal classical course for secondary schools. The Twentieth Century Classical Texts satisfy at every point this universal requirement.

The methods of teaching Latin and Greek as revised and now adopted by American educators call for a less pedantic, more humanistic style, dominantly literary in spirit, giving a clear, forceful impression of ancient life and thought. The modern secondary text-book is not merely grammatical, but also historical; fitted to arouse living enthusiasm for the great masterpieces of ancient thought and for their exquisite literary dress.

All this, recently focused in the action of the National Educational Association, is now embodied for the first time in this Series, edited by representative scholars of the universities that have had most to do with classical culture in America.

The general editors and their colleagues are all practical teachers, originators, and leaders in the courses now pursued in our secondary-school system.

Hence, the Twentieth Century Classical Series offers the simplest, most practical, and up-to-date Latin and Greek books ever prepared for American schools.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

A First Latin Book.

By CLIFFORD HERSCHEL MOORE, Ph.D., Assistant Professor in Harvard University. 12mo. Cloth, $1.10.

It actually prepares for the reading of Nepos and Caesar.

The Vocabulary is limited to about 900 words, of which about 850 are those most frequently found in Nepos and Caesar.

With few exceptions each word has been used eight times and upward in the exercises.

Inflections and syntax are logically developed with full illustrations.

Simplest constructions in connection with fundamental inflections are used from the outset.

The subjunctive is introduced early, and indirect discourse is treated in relation to object infinitive.

Careful attention is given to the subject-matter of the exercises. In the majority of exercises the sentences taken together tell some story.

Numerous connected passages for reading, drawn and adapted from various Roman authors, are given.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
NEW YORK. BOSTON. CHICAGO. LONDON.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

Cornelius Nepos.

By GEORGE DAVIS CHASE, Ph.D., Professor of Latin, Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn. 12mo. Cloth, $1.00.

This book is designed as a first reader for beginners, to whom the elements of Latin Grammar are not yet thoroughly familiar. In the early exercises the notes are more in detail than in the later ones. The book is brief and to the point. It aims to give nothing that will not be needed and used by beginners. It contains thirteen "Lives," arranged in the order of difficulty; there are maps, illustrations, and a special vocabulary.

Sallust's Catiline.

By ALFRED GUDEMAN, Ph.D., Professor in Cornell University. 12mo. Cloth.

This edition of Sallust's Catiline furnishes, with a carefully revised text, all the aids that the pupil will need for the reading of this work. Some of its characteristic features are: Citations from standard grammars are given but once, but then with proper headings and cross references; historical information is not scattered through the notes, but given in the Index of Names. The plan of the vocabulary saves time and space by giving the exact meaning at each recurrence of the word in regular order, with chapter references added. A map illustrating Catiline's battles and eight half-tone illustrations and portraits add an interesting as well as a helpful feature to the work

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

NEW YORK. BOSTON. CHICAGO. LONDON.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

The First Six Books of Virgil's Æneid.

By JESSE B. CARTER, Ph.D., Professor of Latin in Princeton University. 12mo. Cloth, $1.40.

The story of the struggles and adventures of the mythical Æneas will always be of fascinating interest to young students and readers. In his book Professor Carter presents the work of the great Latin poet to school-boys as literature rather than as a clothes-horse for syntactical theories. The editor has endeavored to make the reading of the Æneid interesting, and this he has succeeded in doing. His vivid picture of Virgil's personality makes him appear as a living, active contemporary rather than as a dim vision of the past, and the student is eager to read the story as it came from Virgil's pen. In the Notes the poetical beauty of the narrative is brought out, and the customs, places, and characters referred to are explained Quantities have been marked in the Vocabulary only, the editor believing that the marking of quantities in recent text books has been carried too far. The text followed has been mainly that of Ribbeck's, but conjectures have been admitted where it has seemed wise. The illustrations in the book are numerous and attractive, and a number of maps and charts increase the graphic element in the elucidation of the text.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

NEW YORK. BOSTON. CHICAGO. LONDON.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

Eight Orations of Cicero, together with Selected Passages and Letters.

Edited, with an Introduction, Notes, and a Vocabulary, by CHARLES H. FORBES, A.M., Professor of Latin in Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass. 12mo. Cloth, $1.40.

The text of the first six orations in this book is that of C. F. W. Müller, now commonly used in the best school-books abroad. For the Pro Milone and the Pro Marcello the superior readings of A. C. Clark, in the Oxford series, have been adopted. The SELECTED PASSAGES for extra reading were chosen for their worth and beauty, and these, together with the few short LETTERS, will afford a glimpse of the orator in other fields of literature. But the student's strength should be given to the understanding of Cicero as an orator—a task quite difficult enough for a year's study. The NOTES are designed for students, and have been tested in actual use. No effort has been made to wrest grammatical drill from the hands of the teacher, nor to deprive him of ample leeway for the illustration and elucidation of the subject-matter. The translations suggested aim to lead the pupil into the paths of respectable English, and to prevent the disastrous persistence of crude impressions, received while his mind was groping for ideas in a wilderness of unfamiliar words. The student will find quite enough material left for the exercise of his own powers.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

NEW YORK. BOSTON. CHICAGO LONDON.

APPLETONS' CLASSICAL DICTIONARIES.

Appletons' Latin Dictionary (Latin-English and English-Latin). New and Revised edition, 1902

By J. R. V. MARCHANT, M. A., Oxford, and JOSEPH F. CHARLES, B. A., City of London School. 122d Thousand. 927 pages, 12mo. Cloth, $1.50.

This is a lexicon of classical Latin. Hence, a large number of archaic and post-Augustan words are omitted. In the edition of 1902 nearly all the important articles have been entirely rewritten, chiefly to introduce a greater number of quotations illustrating construction and usage. The historical and geographical notices have been increased in number and lessened in size, and etymologies have been added. The considerable changes in type and classification will make the work more intelligible, and so more useful. A book of the highest practical utility, exceptionally clear and exact.

A Classical Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography, Mythology, and Geography.

Based on the larger dictionaries by the late Sir WILLIAM SMITH, D. C. L., LL. D. Revised throughout and in part rewritten by G. E. MARINDIN, M. A., Cambridge. With numerous maps and illustrations. 8vo. Half morocco, $6.00.

The "Classical Dictionary," of which this book is a revision, was designed by the late Sir William Smith for schools, and as a compendious reference book. The historical articles include Greek and Latin writers from the earliest times down to the fall of the Western Empire, A. D. 476. The literary articles cover all authors whose works are extant, and all others who influenced literature. In this revision the immense advances in classical philology have been utilized. This applies particularly to mythology and typography. Many new plans and maps have been inserted. This book is an indispensable companion to the student in reading the Greek and Latin authors.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

A History of Ancient Greek Literature.

By HAROLD N. FOWLER, Ph.D., Professor of Greek, Western Reserve University. 12mo. Cloth, $1.40.

A complete history of ancient Greek literature from its beginning to Justinian; hence more comprehensive than any other similar history in the English language. While primarily a text-book, it is not a dry compilation of facts, but an entertaining and delightful story of one of the world's great literatures, enriched with many extracts from Greek authors. The book contains nothing that should not be familiar to every man and woman. The style is easy and interesting; proportion and perspective are well preserved; the scholarship is modern and accurate. The history will commend itself to a large class of readers, and especially to students of Greek and of comparative literature.

"It would be difficult to improve upon the clearness, simplicity, and thoroughness of Professor Fowler's history. Especially to be commended is the feature that places within one's reach in convenient form a complete account of Greek Literature down to the time of Justinian. It has too long been the custom to take it for granted that Greece produced little worth studying after the time of Aristotle."

—*Prof. F. H. Huddilston, University of Maine.*

"I know no other book which within the same compass tells so much clear and easy truth about Greek literature."

—*Prof. G. H. Palmer, Harvard University.*

"I feel sure that it will prove a very valuable aid to the literary study of Greek, as well as to the improvement of teaching in the general history of literature."—*Prof. E. D. Perry, Columbia University.*

"It is the fullest and most clearly arranged text-book of the subject in the English language. The fine illustrations and the valuable bibliography make it unusually helpful to the student, and the citations in translation from the authors discussed make it intelligible and interesting to the general reader. It represents accurately the consensus of modern scholarship."—*Prof. B. Newhall, Kenyon College.*

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

NEW YORK. BOSTON. CHICAGO. LONDON.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

THE CLASSICAL SERIES.

A School Grammar of Attic Greek.

By THOMAS DWIGHT GOODELL, Ph. D., Professor of Greek in Yale University. 12mo. Cloth, $1.50 net.

This is the only Greek Grammar that contains the modern knowledge of the subject, and sets forth the modern methods of teaching it.

Goodell's Greek Grammar does this thoroughly, accurately, and simply. It is written by a distinguished Greek scholar—a successor of Woolsey, Hadley, and Packard—who has had years of experience in secondary schools and is to day in closest touch with them.

Intended primarily for such schools, this book is made as plain as possible. Rarer forms and principles of syntax, such as are naturally explained in lexicon or notes, are here omitted; classification and terminology have been much simplified.

Yet this Grammar supplies all that is needed for reading the drama and Attic prose commonly studied in freshman and sophomore years.

Sentences are classified by form instead of by function. In like manner, subordinate clauses are classified first by the introductory word, then by mode and tense. Not only is this better scientifically, but the result is a more concrete and intelligible system for young students.

Larger and plainer type is used, especially for the Greek, than in any other Greek Grammar. Of this larger print the book contains about three hundred pages.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

Greek Lessons for Beginners.

By Frederick S. Morrison, Teacher of Greek in the Hartford Public High School, and Thomas Dwight Goodell, Professor of Greek in Yale University. 12mo. Cloth, $1.10.

The demand for a beginner's book that shall introduce the student at the outset to the grammar that he will use throughout his course is rapidly increasing, and this book has been prepared to supply that demand. It is designed for use with Goodell's "School Grammar of Attic Greek," and to aid the student in acquiring a comprehensive grasp of Greek forms, a working vocabulary, and a practical knowledge of Greek constructions that will lead him to an accurate but rapid and enjoyable reading of the Anabasis. In each of the forty-eight chapters are references to the Grammar for paradigms and principles, such supplemental explanations and examples as are necessary, a suggestive vocabulary, and carefully graded exercises in Greek and in English, with copious notes. Reviews, consisting of helpful groupings and live exercises rather than dry lists of words, are given as they are needed. To these are added selections in Greek and the text of Anabasis I, 1 3, with notes on the page with the text, and syntax tables for review; also complete general vocabularies, a list of proper names carefully transliterated, and other useful tables.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
NEW YORK. BOSTON. CHICAGO. LONDON.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

GREEK TEXTS.

Selections from Homer's Iliad.

Edited, with an Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by ALLEN R. BENNER, A. B., Professor of Greek, Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass. $1.60.

This edition of selections from the Iliad contains about five thousand lines. It includes Books I, II (except the catalogue of the ships), and III, which are commonly prescribed for college entrance. In addition, it embraces the notable portions of the poem that concern Achilles, Patroclus, and Hector. Books IX, XVIII, and XXII appear entire, with the larger part of Books VI and XVI, and short selections from V, XV, XIX, and XXIV.

A novel feature of this edition is the definition in foot-notes of very unusual words—chiefly such as are found only once in Homer—on the pages where they occur.

Grammatical and literary notes are appended. Those on the earlier books are chiefly grammatical and interpretative, and contain abundant references to the brief Homeric Grammar which is a part of this edition.

In the accompanying Vocabulary the more obvious cognate words in Latin and English are always shown in so far as they are useful.

The book is beautifully illustrated, particularly in the Introduction. This deals with the principal theories, based on the most recent archæological evidence, of Homeric dress and armor.

The book provides material for one year's work in school, including practice in sight reading.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

NEW YORK :: BOSTON :: CHICAGO :: LONDON.

The Life of the Ancient Greeks, with Special Reference to Athens.

By CHARLES BURTON GULICK, Ph. D., Assistant Professor of Greek in Harvard University. $1.40.

This book gives clearly and simply those essential facts about the daily life of the Greeks which experience has shown that the high-school pupil may learn profitably while reading Greek authors or studying Greek history. It will lessen the teacher's task, and help his pupils to external acquaintance with the facts that bristle on every page of ancient history.

For readers of the "Anabasis" the correlation between that work and this is complete; all passages that bear on antiquities have been gathered, and have been made the basis of final appeal when new facts are given. Thus, by the use of this history a pupil may read Xenophon with a new knowledge and a new purpose; indeed, many passages may now be studied solely with reference to antiquities. The scope of the book is limited to Athens in the fifth and fourth centuries B. C., thus making it primarily a companion to the dramatists, the historians, and the orators; but Homeric life is touched on by way of contrast or to show historical continuity.

The work has been illustrated with the utmost care and fulness. The pictures, which are beautifully executed, have been chosen not merely for their pictorial effect, but chiefly for their illustrative value. By means of a unique index, the teacher will find it possible to assign topics for composition or class-room discussion, material for which is given in several illustrations.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

Medieval and Modern History.

By DANA CARLETON MUNRO, Professor of European History, University of Wisconsin, and MERRICK WHITCOMB, Professor of Modern History, University of Cincinnati. 12mo. Cloth, $1.50.

The Medieval History covers the period from Charles the Great to the beginning of the fourteenth century—the development of Europe in the middle ages proper. It treats of all the peoples who were influential in shaping the history of our ancestors, and shows what was due to each nation. It describes the real life of the people, and less space is given to wars and political events than to *the civilization and the general social structure of the period.*

The modern history takes up the story of European progress from the close of the middle ages, when new impulses began to make themselves felt in all departments of Christian society. It brings the history of each European state down to the opening of the twentieth century, emphasizing, in the case of each, the particular problem with which its people have at present to contend.

To each chapter is added a series of source extracts, illustrating and amplifying the matter of the foregoing text. Maps, illustrations, and bibliographical notes and references are abundant throughout both sections of the complete work.

THE VOLUMES BOUND SEPARATELY.

A History of the Middle Ages.

By DANA CARLETON MUNRO, Professor of European History, University of Wisconsin. 12mo. Cloth, 90 cents.

A History of Modern Europe.

By MERRICK WHITCOMB, Professor of Modern History, University of Cincinnati. 12mo. Cloth, $1.10.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

NEW YORK. BOSTON. CHICAGO. LONDON.